Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.
altar
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...
Ammon, Ammonite
Amorite
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
appoint, appointed
Artaxerxes
Asaph
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
Benjamin, Benjamite
Bethel
bind, bond, bound
bless, blessed, blessing
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee
bread
bronze
brother
burnt offering, offering by fire
camel
Canaan, Canaanite
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
cedar, cedarwood
Chaldea, Chaldean
chief
clean, wash
command, commandment
commander
conscise, confession
consecrate, consecrated, consecration
consume, devour
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...
covenant
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
Cyrus
Darius
David
declare, proclaim, announce
decree, decreed
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted
defile, defiled
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...
descend, descendant
destroy, destruction, annihilate
| die, dead, deadly, death,          | 436 |
| dishonor, dishonorable           | 438 |
| dominion                         | 439 |
| donkey, mule                      | 440 |
| Egypt, Egyptian                  | 441 |
| Elam, Elamites                   | 442 |
| elder, older, old                | 443 |
| evil, wicked, unpleasant         | 444 |
| ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshears, sheepskins | 446 |
| Ezra                             | 447 |
| face, facial                     | 448 |
| fast, fasting                    | 449 |
| fear, afraid, dread              | 450 |
| feast, feasting                  | 451 |
| flock, herd                      | 452 |
| forsake, forsaken, leave         | 453 |
| found, founder, foundation       | 454 |
| freewill offering                | 455 |
| fulfill, fulfilled, carried out  | 456 |
| gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway | 457 |
| goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids | 458 |
| God                              | 459 |
| god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry | 461 |
| gold, golden                     | 463 |
| good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best | 464 |
| govern, government, governor, proconsul | 466 |
| grace, gracious                  | 467 |
| grain offering                   | 468 |
| guilt offering                   | 469 |
| guilt, guilty                    | 470 |
| Haggai                           | 471 |
| hand                             | 472 |
| hang, hung                       | 474 |
| head                             | 475 |
| heart                            | 476 |
| heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly   | 477 |
| Hittite                          | 478 |
| holy, holiness, unholy, sacred   | 479 |
| hope, hoped                      | 481 |
| horse, warhorse, horseback       | 482 |
| horseman                         | 483 |
| house                            | 484 |
| house of God, Yahweh's house     | 485 |
| humble, humbled, humility        | 486 |
| inherit, inheritance, heir       | 487 |
| iniquity                         | 488 |
Israel, Israelite, Jacob 489
Israel, Israelites 490
Jebus, Jebusite 491
Jeremiah 492
Jericho 493
Jerusalem 494
Jew, Jewish 496
Joppa 497
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing 498
Judah 500
Judea 501
judge, judgment 502
king, kingdom, kingship 504
kingdom 505
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish 507
lamb, Lamb of God 508
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law 510
law, principle 512
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness 513
Lebanon 515
Levi, Levite, Levitical 516
livestock, animals 517
lord, Lord, master, sir 518
magistrate 520
Mede, Medes, Media 521
might, mighty, mighty works 522
Moab, Moabite 523
mourn, mourner, weeping 524
name 525
nation 526
Nebuchadnezzar 527
Nehemiah 528
noble, nobleman, royal official 529
oath, swear, swearing, swear by 530
oil 531
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs 532
oversee, overseer 533
palace 534
Passover 535
peace, peaceful, peacemakers 536
people of God 537
people, people group, 538
perfect, perfected, perfection, complete 540
Perizzite 541
Persia, Persians 542
power, powerful, powerfully 543
praise, praised, praiseworthy
pray, prayer
precious, valuable, expensive, fine
priest, priesthood
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...
promise, promised
Promised Land
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
prosper, prosperity, prosperous
province, provincial
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished
pure, purify, purification
Ramah
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
reign, rule
remnant
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...
robe, robed
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
Samaria, Samaritan
scribe
scroll
seed, semen
seek, search, look for
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
set apart
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
Sidon, Sidonians
silver
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
slaughter, slaughtered
Solomon
son
spirit, spiritual
statute
sword, swordsmen
tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,
teach, teaching, untaught
temple
transgress, transgression
tremble, stagger
trespass
tribe, tribal, tribesmen
tribute, contribution, fined
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...

trumpet, trumpeters ................................................................. 602
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness .............................. 603
Tyre, Tyrians ........................................................................... 604
understand, understanding, thinking ....................................... 605
unleavened bread ................................................................... 606
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out 607
wheat ....................................................................................... 608
will of God ............................................................................... 609
wine, wineskin, new wine ......................................................... 610
wise, wisdom .......................................................................... 611
wrath, fury .............................................................................. 612
Yahweh .................................................................................... 613
Zechariah (OT) ........................................................................ 615
Zerubbabel ............................................................................ 616

Contributors ........................................................................ 617
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors ........................ 617
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors ................................. 623
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors ............................ 624
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors ................ 624
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors ..................... 625
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Ezra
Introduction to Ezra

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Ezra

1. The first Jewish exiles return to Jerusalem from Persia (1:1–2:70)
2. The people rebuild and dedicate the temple in Jerusalem (3:1–6:22)
3. More exiles return; Ezra teaches the Law of Yahweh (7:1-8:36)
4. The problem of the people marrying foreigners, and how it is solved (9:1–10:44)

What is the Book of Ezra about?

The Book of Ezra is about how the people of Israel returned from Babylon and tried to worship Yahweh again as the law required. To do this they needed to rebuild their temple so they could sacrifice to Yahweh. (See: temple)

How should the title of this book be translated?

The Book of Ezra is named for the priest Ezra who led the first group of Jews out of exile and back to Judah. Translators can use the traditional title “Ezra.” Or they might choose a clearer title, such as “The Book about Ezra.”

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why were Israelites not allowed to marry people from other nations?

Foreigners worshiped many false gods. Yahweh did not allow his people to marry foreigners. He knew this would cause the people of Israel to worship false gods. (See: god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry)

Did all of the people of Israel return to their homeland?

Many of the Jews remained in Babylon instead of returning to the Promised Land. Many of them were successful in Babylon and desired to remain there. However, this meant that they were unable to worship Yahweh in Jerusalem as their ancestors had done. (See: Promised Land)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How does the Book of Ezra use the term “Israel”?

The Book of Ezra uses the term “Israel” to refer to the kingdom of Judah. It was mostly made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. The other ten tribes had ended their loyalty to any kings descended from David. God allowed the Assyrians to conquer the other ten tribes and take them into exile. As a result, they mixed with other people groups and did not return to the land of Israel. (See: Israel, Israelites)

Are the events in the Book of Ezra told in the order that they actually happened?

Some of the events in the Book of Ezra are not told in the order they actually happened. Translators should pay attention to notes that signal when events are probably out of order.
Ezra 1

Ezra 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The chapter records the story of the first Jews as they return from Persia to Judea.

Special concepts in this chapter

King Cyrus

King Cyrus allowed them to return because he wanted them to rebuild the temple. Those who stayed behind gave gifts to those who left to help them on their journey and resettlement. This practice was common under the reign of Cyrus and was used as a way to maintain peace throughout his kingdom. (See: temple)

Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Jews

Upon return to Judea, the focus of the rest of the Old Testament is on the Jewish people.
Ezra 1:1

In the first year of (ULT)
During the first year (UST)

This refers to the beginning of the reign of King Cyrus. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

by the mouth of Jeremiah (ULT)
Jeremiah had spoken (UST)

Here “mouth” represents speaking. Alternate translation: “Yahweh did what Jeremiah prophesied that Yahweh would do” (See: Metonymy)

Yahweh (ULT)
Yahweh (UST)

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Yahweh…the spirit of Cyrus (ULT)
motivated...Cyrus (UST)

Here Cyrus is represented by his spirit. This speaks of Yahweh causing Cyrus to want to act as if he “stirred” his spirit. Alternate translation: “Yahweh…made Cyrus want to act” (See: Synecdoche and Metaphor)

so that his voice went out throughout all his kingdom (ULT)
proclaimed throughout...empire (UST)

The voice is a metonym for the message the voice speaks, and the kingdom is a metonym for the people whom a king rules. Alternate translation: “Cyrus sent a message to everyone over whom he ruled” (See: Metonymy)

what was written was spoken (ULT)
to write this message...and then Cyrus caused this message to be (UST)

This can be translated in active form. It might be best to translate so the reader understands that other people might have helped Cyrus get the message to the people over whom he ruled. Alternate translation: “what Cyrus wrote and what his messengers read so people could hear them” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• the spirit of
• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• so that...might be fulfilled
• Jeremiah
• Persia
• Persia (2)
• Cyrus
• Cyrus
Translation Words - UST

- Cyrus
- Yahweh
- motivated
- he did something that fulfilled the prophecy
- Jeremiah
- the Persian Empire
- his (2)
- Cyrus
- that...ruled
- Cyrus
- empire
Ezra 1:2

**the kingdoms of the earth (ULT)**
**Empire...earth (UST)**

Here “all” is an exaggeration, as there were kingdoms over which Cyrus did not rule. (See: *Hyperbole*)

**for him a house...in Judah (ULT)**
**that...a temple...in Judah (UST)**

You may need to make explicit that the house was for people to worship Yahweh. Alternate translation: ‘a house in...Judea where people can worship him” (See: *Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information*)

Translation Words - ULT

- Heaven
- appointed
- God of
- Yahweh
- in Judah
- Persia
- Cyrus
- in Jerusalem
- king of
- the kingdoms of
- a house

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- has made me ruler
- the God who is
- Yahweh
- in Judah
- the Persian
- Cyrus
- in Jerusalem
- I, King
- Empire
- a temple

ULT

2 “Thus says *Cyrus, king of Persia:* Yahweh, God of Heaven, gave me all the kingdoms of the earth, and he appointed me to build for him a house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah.

UST

2 “I, King Cyrus, rule the Persian Empire, and I say this: Yahweh, the God who is in heaven, has made me ruler of all the kingdoms on earth. And he has assigned me to make sure that his people build a temple for him in Jerusalem, in Judah.
Ezra 1:3

his people (ULT)
people (UST)

the people who belong to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

• his people
• his God
• the God of
• the God
• Yahweh
• Israel
• in Judah
• to Jerusalem
• in Jerusalem
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• people
• to God
• the God
• the God of
• for Yahweh
• Israel
• Jerusalem
• Jerusalem
• in Jerusalem
• temple

ULT
3 Whoever among you is from all his people (may his God be with him) may go up to Jerusalem which is in Judah and build the house of Yahweh, the God of Israel. He is the God who is in Jerusalem.

UST
3 All you people who belong to God may go up to Jerusalem to rebuild this temple for Yahweh, the God who lives in Jerusalem, the God of Israel.
Ezra 1:4

Whoever survives in any place where he lives, let the people in that place help him (ULT)
The other people who are living where Israelites are now in exile, whose ancestors were exiled here...for the journey to Jerusalem (UST)

Those Israelites who choose to stay where they are should help those who choose to go to Jerusalem physically and financially.

Translation Words - ULT
- God
- in Jerusalem
- with silver
- and animals
- a freewill offering
- and gold
- for the house of

Translation Words - UST
- of God
- in Jerusalem
- must contribute silver
- give them some livestock
- and gifts of money to help build the
- and gold to those who go
- temple

ULT
4 Whoever survives in any place where he lives, let the people in that place help him with silver and gold, and possessions and animals, as well as a freewill offering for the house of God which is in Jerusalem.”

UST
4 The other people who are living where Israelites are now in exile, whose ancestors were exiled here, must contribute silver and gold to those who go. They should also give the Jews the supplies that they will need for the journey to Jerusalem. They should also give them some livestock and gifts of money to help build the temple of God in Jerusalem.”
Ezra 1:5

with everyone whose spirit God had stirred up to go up (ULT)
and Levites...and...of the tribes that were descended from...motivated...to return to Jerusalem (UST)

Stirring the spirit is a metonym for making someone want to act. See how you translated these words in Ezra 1:1. Alternate translation: “everyone whom God had made want to go” (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- whose spirit
- Yahweh
- and the priests
- Judah
- and Benjamin
- and the Levites
- in Jerusalem
- the fathers’ households of
- the heads of
- the house of

**Translation Words - UST**

- and...of
- motivated
- temple
- some of the priests
- Judah
- and Benjamin to return to
- and Levites
- Jerusalem. Those whom God...got ready
- some of the leaders
- some of the leaders
- temple

**ULT**

5 Then arose the heads of the fathers' households of Judah and Benjamin, and the priests, and the Levites, with everyone whose spirit God had stirred up to go up and build the house of Yahweh which is in Jerusalem.

**UST**

5 Then God motivated some of the priests and Levites and some of the leaders of the tribes that were descended from Judah and Benjamin to return to Jerusalem. Those whom God motivated got ready to return to Jerusalem and build the temple for him there.
Ezra 1:6

**ULT**

strengthened their hands (ULT)
helped them by giving them (UST)

This refers to the work of the people roused by God in the previous verse.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- their hands
- silver
- and animals
- strengthened
- they freely offered
- and gold
- and precious things

**Translation Words - UST**

- by giving them
- silver
- and livestock
- helped them
- for building the temple
- and golden things
- and also gave them money to buy things

---

ULT

6 All those who were around them strengthened their hands with objects of silver and gold, possessions, and animals and precious things, besides all they freely offered.

UST

6 All of their neighbors helped them by giving them silver and golden things, and supplies for the journey, and livestock. They also gave them other valuable gifts, and also gave them money to buy things for building the temple.
Ezra 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his gods
- Yahweh
- in the temple of
- Cyrus
- from Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- King
- belonging to the house of

Translation Words - UST

- of their gods in Babylon
- Yahweh
- the temples
- Cyrus
- in Jerusalem
- King Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers
- King
- from the temple of

ULT

7 King Cyrus also brought out the objects belonging to the house of Yahweh that Nebuchadnezzar had taken from Jerusalem and put in the temple of his gods.

UST

7 King Cyrus brought out the valuable things that King Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers had taken from the temple of Yahweh in Jerusalem and put in the temples of their gods in Babylon.
Ezra 1:8

Mithredath...to Sheshbazzar (ULT)
Mithredath...Sheshbazzar (UST)

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

brought them out...by the hand of Mithredath the treasurer (ULT)
commanded...Mithredath, the treasurer...of the Persian Empire (UST)

Putting an object into someone's hand is a metaphor for allowing that person to do what he wants with that object. Here the reader should understand that Cyrus expected Mithredath to do what Cyrus wanted him to do. Alternate translation: “put Mithredath the treasurer in charge of them” or “made Mithredath the treasurer responsible for them” (See: Metaphor)

the treasurer (ULT)
the treasurer (UST)

official in charge of money

Translation Words - ULT

• brought them out
• Judah
• Persia
• Cyrus
• the hand of
• King...of
• the prince of

Translation Words - UST

• commanded
• Judah
• of the Persian Empire
• Cyrus
• of the Persian Empire
• Cyrus
• the leader of the group that was going to return to

ULT
8 King Cyrus of Persia brought them out by the hand of Mithredath the treasurer, and counted them out to Sheshbazzar, the prince of Judah.

UST
8 Cyrus commanded Mithredath, the treasurer of the Persian Empire, to count all these items and then give them to Sheshbazzar, the leader of the group that was going to return to Judah.
Ezra 1:9

General Information:
This is a list of numbered items.

thirty...one thousand...twenty-nine (ULT)
Thirty...one thousand...twenty-nine (UST)

“30...1,000...29” (See: Numbers)

basins (ULT)
basins (UST)

objects used to hold water for washing

Translation Words - ULT

• silver
• gold

Translation Words - UST

• silver
• gold

ULT
9 This was their number: thirty gold basins, one thousand silver basins, twenty-nine utensils,

UST
9 This is a list of the items that Cyrus donated: Thirty gold basins, one thousand silver basins, twenty-nine other basins,
Ezra 1:10

410 (ULT)
four hundred and ten (UST)

“30...1,000...29...four hundred and ten” (See: Numbers)

bowls (ULT)
bowls (UST)

objects used to hold water for washing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation Words - ULT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gold</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation Words - UST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gold</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ULT  
10 thirty gold bowls, 410 small silver bowls, and a thousand additional objects.

UST  
10 thirty gold bowls, four hundred and ten similar silver bowls, and one thousand other objects.
Ezra 1:11

5,400 (ULT)
five thousand four hundred (UST)

“five thousand four hundred...in all.” This is the total number of items returned to Jerusalem from Babylon, which are listed above individually. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- from Babylon
- to Jerusalem
- and silver
- the exiles
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- returned to
- Jerusalem
- silver
- when he and the others
- and gold

ULT

11 There were 5,400 items of gold and silver in all. Sheshbazzar brought all of them with the exiles who were brought from Babylon to Jerusalem.

UST

11 All together, there were five thousand four hundred silver and gold items given to Sheshbazzar to take with him when he and the others returned to Jerusalem.
Ezra 2

Ezra 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Genealogy

People had to prove they were priests, or that they were Jews, through their genealogies. (See: priest, priesthood)
These are the people of the province who went up from the captivity of those who were exiled, whom King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon had carried away to Babylon, and who returned to Jerusalem and Judah, each to his city.

This begins a list of the names of people who returned from the exile. This is an idiom that refers to traveling toward Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “returned” or “came back” (See: Idiom)

- the people of
- Babylon
- to Babylon
- and Judah
- to Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- those who were exiled
- the province
- King...of

King Nebuchadnezzar’s soldiers captured many Israelite people and took them to Babylonia. Many years later, some Israelite people returned to Judah. Some returned to Jerusalem, and some returned to other places in Judah. They went to the towns where their ancestors had lived. This is a list of the groups who returned.
Ezra 2:2

Seraiah, Reelaiah, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispar, Bigvai, Rehum, and Baanah (ULT)
Seraiah, Reelaiah, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispar, Bigvai, Rehum, and Baanah (UST)

These are men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

This is the number of (ULT)
The groups of (UST)

This refers to the list of men in 2:3-35.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Nehemiah
- Zerubbabel
- the people of

Translation Words - UST

- who returned to Judah are listed next
- Nehemiah
- Zerubbabel
- people
Ezra 2:3

General Information:
This continues the list of the names of people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group. (See: Numbers)

Parosh (ULT)
Parosh (UST)
a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• The sons of

Translation Words - UST
• descendants of

ULT
3 The sons of Parosh: two thousand one hundred and seventy two.

UST
3 2,172 descendants of Parosh
Ezra 2:4

Shephatiah (ULT)
Shephatiah (UST)

a man’s name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • The sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • descendants of

ULT
4 The sons of Shephatiah: 372.

UST
4 372 descendants of Shephatiah
Ezra 2:5

Arah (ULT)
Arach (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
Ezra 2:6

Pahath-Moab...Jeshua (ULT)
Pahath-Moab...Jeshua (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of
• the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• from the families of
• descendants of

ULT
6 The sons of Pahath-Moab, the sons of Jeshua and Joab: 2,812.

UST
6 2,812 descendants of Pahath-Moab, from the families of Jeshua and Joab
Ezra 2:7

General Information:

This continues the list of the names of people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of
• Elam

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
• Elam
Ezra 2:8

Zattu (ULT)
Zattu (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• The sons of

Translation Words - UST
• descendants of

ULT
8 The sons of Zattu: 945.

UST
8 945 descendants of Zattu
Ezra 2:9

Zakkai (ULT)
Zaccai (UST)

a man’s name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • The sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • descendants of
Ezra 2:10

Bani (ULT)
Bani (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • The sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • descendants of

ULT
10 The sons of Bani: 642.

UST
10 642 descendants of Bani
Ezra 2:11

General Information:

This continues the list of the names of people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group. (See: Numbers)

Bebai (ULT)
Bebai (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of

Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
Ezra 2:12

Azgad (ULT)
Azgad (UST)

These are men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ULT</th>
<th>UST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 The sons of Azgad: 1,222.</td>
<td>12 1,222 descendants of Azgad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ezra 2:13

Adonikam (ULT)
Adonikam (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of

ULT
13 The sons of Adonikam: 666.

UST
13 666 descendants of Adonikam
Ezra 2:14

Bigvai (ULT)
Bigvai (UST)

This is a man’s name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:2.

Translation Words - ULT
• The sons of

Translation Words - UST
• descendants of
Ezra 2:15

General Information:

This continues the list of the names of people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group. (See: Numbers)

Adin (ULT)
Adin (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
Ezra 2:16

Ater (ULT)
Ater (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

ninety-eight (ULT)
Ninety-eight (UST)

“98” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
  • The sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • descendants of

ULT
16 The sons of Ater, through Hezekiah: ninety-eight.

UST
16 Ninety-eight descendants of Ater, who descended from Hezekiah
Ezra 2:17

Bezai (ULT)
Bezai (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
Ezra 2:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of

ULT

18 The sons of Jorah: 112.

UST

18 112 descendants of Jorah
Ezra 2:19

General Information:
This continues the list of people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group. Notice that starting in 2:21 these now are the names of places from where they originally came. (See: Numbers)

Hashum (ULT)
Hashum (UST)

a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
Ezra 2:20

Gibbar (ULT)
Gibbar People whose ancestors had lived in these towns in Judah (UST)

These are men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

ninety-five (ULT)
Ninty-five (UST)

“95” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
Ezra 2:21

The sons of Bethlehem (ULT)
from Bethlehem (UST)

This begins to list the number of people whose ancestors had lived in towns in Judah. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• from

ULT
21 The sons of Bethlehem: 123.

UST
21 123 from Bethlehem
Ezra 2:22

fifty-six (ULT)
Fifty-six (UST)

“56” (See: Numbers)

Netophah (ULT)
Netophah (UST)

This is the name of a town in Judah. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 2:23

General Information:
This continues the list people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group whose ancestors came from the places listed. (See: Numbers)

Anathoth (ULT)
Anathoth (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 2:24

Azmaveth (ULT)
Azmaveth (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

forty-two (ULT)
Forty-two (UST)

“42” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
  • The sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • from

ULT
24 The sons of Azmaveth: forty-two.

UST
24 Forty-two from Azmaveth
Ezra 2:25

Kiriath Arim, Kephirah, and Beeroth (ULT)
Kiriath Arim, Kephirah, and Beeroth (UST)

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- The sons of

**Translation Words - UST**
- from

ULT
25 The sons of Kiriath Arim, Kephirah, and Beeroth: 743.

UST
25 743 from Kiriath Arim, Kephirah, and Beeroth
Ezra 2:26

and Geba (ULT)
and Geba (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • The sons of
  • Ramah

Translation Words - UST
  • from
  • Ramah
Ezra 2:27

General Information:

This continues with the list of people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group whose ancestors came from the places listed. (See: Numbers)

Michmas (ULT)
Michmas (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 2:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Bethel
• and Ai

Translation Words - UST

• Bethel
• and Ai

ULT
28 The men of Bethel and Ai: 223.

UST
28 223 from Bethel and Ai
Ezra 2:29

Nebo (ULT)
Nebo (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

fifty-two

“52” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
  • The sons of

Translation Words - UST
  • from

ULT
29 The sons of Nebo: fifty-two.

UST
29 Fifty-two from Nebo
Ezra 2:30

Magbish (ULT)
Magbish (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• from

ULT
30 The sons of Magbish: 156.

UST
30 156 from Magbish
Ezra 2:31

General Information:
This continues with the list of people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group whose ancestors came from the places listed. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Elam

Translation Words - UST

- from
- Elam
Ezra 2:32

Harim (ULT)
Harim (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• from

ULT
32 The sons of Harim: 320.

UST
32 320 from Harim
Ezra 2:33

Lod, Hadid, and Ono (ULT)
Lod, Hadid, and Ono (UST)

These are names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• from

ULT
33 The sons of Lod, Hadid, and Ono: 725.

UST
33 725 from Lod, Hadid, and Ono
Ezra 2:34

General Information:

This continues with the list of people who returned from the exile along with the number in each group whose ancestors came from the places listed. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of
• Jericho

Translation Words - UST

• from
• Jericho
Ezra 2:35

Senaah (ULT)
Senaah (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• from

ULT
35 The sons of Senaah: 3,630.

UST
35 3,630 from Senaah
Ezra 2:36

General Information:

This section lists the names of priests whose descendants returned from the exile along with the number in each group. (See: Numbers)

Jedaliah of (ULT)
Jedaliah (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jeshua (ULT)
Jeshua (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:6.

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• The priests
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
• Priests
• who returned...that is, those who descended through

ULT
36 The priests: sons of Jedaliah of the house of Jeshua: 973.

UST
36 Priests who returned: 973 descendants of Jedaliah (that is, those who descended through Jeshua)
Ezra 2:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of

Translation Words - UST

- descendants of

ULT

37 The sons of Immer: 1,052.

UST

37 1,052 descendants of Immer
Ezra 2:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of

ULT

38 The sons of Pashur: 1,247.

UST

38 1,247 descendants of Pashur
Ezra 2:39

**Harim (ULT)**
**Harim (UST)**

The “Harim” in Ezra 2:32 is the name of a place, but here “Harim” is the name of a man.

**Translation Words - ULT**
- The sons of

**Translation Words - UST**
- descendants of

ULT
39 The sons of Harim: 1,017.

UST
39 1,017 descendants of Harim
Ezra 2:40

General Information:

This section lists the names of Levites whose descendants returned from the exile along with the number in each group. (See: How to Translate Names and Numbers)

and Kadmiel...Hodaviah (ULT)
and Kadmiel...who were from the family of Hodaviah (UST)

These are men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

seventy-four (ULT)
Seventy-four (UST)

“74” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• The Levites

Translation Words - UST

• Those from
• descendants of
• the tribe of Levi who returned
Ezra 2:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• Asaph

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
• Asaph

ULT
41 The temple singers, sons of Asaph: 128.

UST
41 128 singers who were descendants of Asaph
Ezra 2:42

Shallum...Ater...Talmon...Akkub...Hatita...Shobai (ULT)
the gatekeepers Shallum...Ater...Talmon...Akkub...Hatita...and Shobai (UST)

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

the gatekeepers (ULT)
gatekeepers who were (UST)
those in charge of who goes through the gates of the temple

Ater (ULT)
Ater (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:16.

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- sons of
- sons of
- sons of (2)
- sons of (3)
- sons of
- and sons of (2)
- the gatekeepers

Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
gatekeepers who were
the gatekeepers Shallum
- Ater (2)
- Talmon (3)
- Akkub
- and Shobai (2)
gatekeepers who were
Ezra 2:43

General Information:

This section continues listing the names of Levites whose descendants returned from the exile.

Ziha...Hasupha...Tabbaoth (ULT)
Ziha...Hasupha...Tabbaoth (UST)

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• Ziha
• Hasupha
• descendants of
Ezra 2:44

Keros…Siaha…Padon (ULT)
Keros…Siaha…Padon (UST)

These are men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of

Translation Words - UST

- Keros
- Siaha
- Padon

ULT
44 sons of Keros, sons of Siaha, sons of Padon,

UST
44 Keros, Siaha, Padon,
Ezra 2:45

Lebanah...Hagabah (ULT)
Lebanah...Hagabah (UST)

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Akkub (ULT)
Akkub (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 2:42.

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• Lebanon
• Hagabah
• Akkub
Ezra 2:46

Hagab...Shalmai...Hanan

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of (2)
• and sons of

Translation Words - UST

• Hagab
• Shalmai (2)
• Hanan

ULT
46 sons of Hagab, sons of Shalmai, and sons of Hanan.

UST
46 Hagab, Shalmai, Hanan,
**Ezra 2:47**

**General Information:**

This section continues listing the names of Levites whose descendants returned from the exile. These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- The sons of
- sons of (2)
- sons of

**Translation Words - UST**

- Giddel
- Gahar (2)
- Reaiah

ULT

47 The sons of Giddel: sons of Gahar, sons of Reaiah,

UST

47 Giddel, Gahar, Reaiah,
Ezra 2:48

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of Rezin
- sons of Nekoda
- sons of Gazzam

Translation Words - UST

- Rezin
- Nekoda
- Gazzam
Ezra 2:49

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• Uzza
• Paseah
• Besai
Ezra 2:50

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• and sons of

Translation Words - UST

• Asnah
• Meunim
• Nephusim
Ezra 2:51

General Information:
This section continues listing the names of Levites whose descendants returned from the exile. These are all names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- The sons of
- sons of (2)
- sons of

Translation Words - UST
- Bakbuk
- Hakupha (2)
- Harhur

ULT
51 The sons of Bakbuk; sons of Hakupha, sons of Harhur,

UST
51 Bakbuk, Hakupha, Harhur,
Ezra 2:52

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of
- sons of (2)
- sons of

Translation Words - UST

- Bazluth
- Mehida (2)
- Harsha
Ezra 2:53

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of
- sons of
- sons of (2)

Translation Words - UST

- Barkos
- Sisera
- Temah (2)

ULT
53 sons of Barkos, sons of Sisera, sons of Temah,

UST
53 Barkos, Sisera, Temah,
Ezra 2:54

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• and sons of (2)

Translation Words - UST

• Neziah
• and Hatipha (2)
Ezra 2:55

General Information:
This section continues listing the names of Levites whose descendants returned from the exile. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- sons of
- sons of (2)
- sons of
- Solomon
- the servants of

Translation Words - UST

- The following descendants of
- Sotai
- Hassophereth (2)
- returned to Jerusalem
- King Solomon's
- servants

ULT
55 The sons of the servants of Solomon: sons of Sotai, sons of Hassophereth, sons of Peruda,

UST
55 The following descendants of King Solomon's servants returned to Jerusalem: Sotai, Hassophereth, Peruda,
Ezra 2:56

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• sons of
• sons of

Translation Words - UST

• Jaalah
• Darkon
• Giddel

ULT
56 sons of Jaalah, sons of Darkon, sons of Giddel,

UST
56 Jaalah, Darkon, Giddel,
Ezra 2:57

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of Shephatiah, sons of Hattil, sons of Pochereth Hazzebaim, and sons of Ami.

Translation Words - UST

- Shephatiah, Hattil, Pochereth Hazzebaim, and Ami.
Ezra 2:58

392 (ULT)
392 (UST)

"three hundred and ninety-two total descendants." This is the number of all the people in this group who came back from the exile. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- and the sons of
- Solomon
- the servants of

Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- and Solomon's
- servants who returned

ULT
58 All the temple servants and the sons of the servants of Solomon: 392.

UST
58 Altogether, there were 392 descendants of temple workers and Solomon's servants who returned.
Ezra 2:59

General Information:
This is a list of people who had returned to Israel from various Babylonian cities but could not prove their heritage. (See: Numbers and How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• from Israel
• their father
• the house of

Translation Words - UST
• they were true Israelites
• they were true Israelites

ULT
59 These were those who came from Tel Melah, Tel Harsha, Kerub, Addon, and Immer—but they could not prove the house of their father or their ancestry, whether they were from Israel—

UST
59 There was another group who returned to Judah from Tel Melah, Tel Harsha, Cerub, Addon, and Immer in Babylonia. But they could not prove that they were true Israelites.
Ezra 2:60

652 (ULT)
This group included 652 people who were (UST)
“six hundred and fifty-two descendants.” (See: Numbers)

Delaiah...Tobiah...Nekoda (ULT)
Delaiah...Tobiah...and Nekoda (UST)

These are men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons of
• of...sons
• sons...and...of

Translation Words - UST

• descendants of
• Tobiah
• and Nekoda

ULT
60 sons of Delaiah, sons of Tobiah, and sons of Nekoda: 652.

UST
60 This group included 652 people who were descendants of Delaiah, Tobiah, and Nekoda.
Ezra 2:61

Habaiah...Hakkoz...Barzillai (ULT)
in this group included people belonging to Habaiah's clan...Hakkoz's clan...and Barzillai's clan (UST)

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• The sons of
• sons of...and
• of...sons
• sons...of (2)
• their name
• the priests
• and was called

Translation Words - UST

• The descendants of the priests
• from
• in this group included people belonging to Habaiah's clan
• and Barzillai's clan (2)
• and he had taken for himself the name of his father-in-law's clan
• The descendants of the priests
• and he had taken for himself the name of his father-in-law's clan
Ezra 2:62

the records of their ancestry (ULT)
in the documents that had the names of the ancestors of all the clans (UST)
the records that told who their ancestors were

but they were not found (ULT)
but these men’s names were not found (UST)
“could not find their names in the records of the priests”

so they were excluded from the priesthood as defiled (ULT)
So they were not permitted do the work that priests did (UST)

This can be translated in active form. The abstract noun “priesthood” can be translated as the verb “work as priests.” Alternate translation: “the other priests treated them as if they were unclean and did not allow them to work as priests” (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

so they were excluded...as defiled (ULT)
So they were not permitted (UST)

not fit to be priests

Translation Words - ULT

• the priesthood
  • so they were excluded...as defiled
  • searched for

Translation Words - UST

• do the work that priests did
  • So they were not permitted
  • searched
Ezra 2:63

with the Urim and Thummim (ULT)
to consult Yahweh by casting the sacred lots, to
determine whether those men were truly Israelites. If
the stones showed that those men were Israelites, they
would be permitted (UST)

two items like dice that the priests used to decide what God wanted
them to do

Translation Words - ULT

• from the most holy food
• a priest
• the governor

Translation Words - UST

• the shares of the sacrifices that were given to the
• priests
• The governor

ULT
63 So the governor said to them that they must not eat from the most holy
food until a priest could consult with the Urim and Thummim.

UST
63 The governor told them that they would need to ask a priest to consult
Yahweh by casting the sacred lots, to determine whether those men were
truly Israelites. If the stones showed that those men were Israelites, they
would be permitted to eat the shares of the sacrifices that were given to the
priests.
Ezra 2:64

The whole group (ULT)
Altogether...Israelite people returned to Judah (UST)

This means the whole group that returned back to the land of Judah from the exile.

42,360 (ULT)
42,360 (UST)

“forty-two thousand three hundred and sixty” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• group

Translation Words - UST

• Altogether...Israelite people returned to Judah
Ezra 2:65

and their maidservants (ULT)
both men and women, who returned (UST)

“their female servants”

these were 7,337 (ULT)
There were...7,337 (UST)

“these were seven thousand three hundred and thirty-seven” (See: Numbers)

and...two hundred (ULT)
two hundred (UST)

“200” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
  • their servants

Translation Words - UST
  • servants
Ezra 2:66

General Information:
This is a list of the animals along with the numbers of each kind that returned with the people from the exile. (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
• Their horses

Translation Words - UST
• The Israelites brought with them from Babylonia...horses

ULT
66 Their horses: 736. Their mules: 245.

UST
66 The Israelites brought with them from Babylonia 736 horses, 245 mules,
Ezra 2:67

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Their donkeys
- Their camels

Translation Words - UST

- donkeys
- camels

ULT


UST

67 435 camels, and 6,720 donkeys.
Ezra 2:68

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- in Jerusalem
- the fathers
- the heads of
- they freely offered gifts
- to the house of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- some of the...leaders
- of Yahweh
- in Jerusalem
- clan
- clan
- gave money for the supplies needed to rebuild the
- at the temple
- temple

ULT

68 When the heads of the fathers came to the house of Yahweh which is in Jerusalem, they freely offered gifts to build the house of God on its site.

UST

68 When they arrived at the temple of Yahweh in Jerusalem, some of the clan leaders gave money for the supplies needed to rebuild the temple in the same place where the old temple had been.
Ezra 2:69

sixty-one thousand...five thousand...one hundred

“61,000...5,000...100” (See: Numbers)

gold darics (ULT)
gold coins (UST)

A “daric” was a small gold coin used by the Persian Empire. (See: Biblical Money)

minas (ULT)
pieces (UST)

A mina is a unit of weight. One mina equals 550 grams. Minas are normally linked with measuring silver. (See: Biblical Weight)

and...tunics (ULT)
and...robes (UST)

garments worn next to the skin

Translation Words - ULT

- priestly
- silver
- gold

Translation Words - UST

- for the priests
- silver
- gold

ULT

69 They gave according to their ability to the treasure for the work: 6.100 gold darics, five thousand silver minas, and one hundred priestly tunics.

UST

69 They all gave as much money as they were able to give. Altogether they gave about 61,000 gold coins, 5000 silver pieces, and one hundred robes for the priests.
Ezra 2:70

in their cities, and all israel lived in their cities (ULT)
started to live in the towns and villages near Jerusalem...went to the other places in Israel there where their ancestors had lived (UST)

Everyone went back to their home towns in Judea. Not everyone resettled in Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

• israel
• the priests
• and the Levites
• the people
• and the gatekeepers

Translation Words - UST

• went to the other places in Israel
• the priests
• the other descendants of Levi
• The rest of the people
• the temple guards, and some of the other people

ULT

70 So the priests, and the Levites, and some of the people, and the singers, and the gatekeepers, and the temple servants lived in their cities, and all israel lived in their cities.

UST

70 Then the priests, the other descendants of Levi, the musicians, the temple guards, and some of the other people started to live in the towns and villages near Jerusalem. The rest of the people went to the other places in Israel there where their ancestors had lived.
Ezra 3

Ezra 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of the building of the temple and re-establishment of worship in the new temple. (See: temple)

Special concepts in this chapter

Rebuilding the temple

They immediately began the temple worship, even though the temple had not yet been built because they feared the people of the surrounding nations.
Ezra 3:1

the seventh month (ULT)
in the autumn of that year (UST)

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the early rain season. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

as one man (ULT)
people...they all gathered together (UST)

One man is in only one place and has only one purpose. Alternate translation: “for one purpose” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• and the sons of
• Israel
• Jerusalem
• the people
• seventh

Translation Words - UST

• returned to
• the Israelite
• Jerusalem
• people
• in the autumn of that year
Then arose Jeshua son of Jozadak, and his brothers the priests, and Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, and his brothers, and built the altar of the God of Israel to offer burnt offerings on it as it is written in the law of Moses the man of God.

2 Then Jeshua son of Jehozadak, and his fellow priests, and Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and his close friends, all began to rebuild the altar of the God of Israel. They did that in order that they could sacrifice burned offerings on it, according to what the prophet Moses had written in the laws that God had given to him.

This can be translated in active form. You may need to make explicit whom and what Yahweh had commanded. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh had commanded them to do in the law of Moses” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• the altar of
• and his brothers
• and his brothers
• son of
• son of (2)
• the God of
• God
• in the law of Moses
• Israel
• the priests
• and Zerubbabel
• burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

• the altar of
• and his fellow
• and his close friends
• son of
• son of (2)
• the God of
• God
• the prophet Moses...laws that...had given to him
• of Israel
• priests
and Zerubbabel

- They did that in order that they could sacrifice burned offerings
Ezra 3:3

Then they set the altar on its foundation (ULT)
they rebuilt the altar at the same place where the previous altar had been (UST)

“mounted the altar on its stand” or “placed the altar on its stand so it would stay there”

dread was on them (ULT)
Even though they were afraid (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “they were very afraid” (See: Idiom)

because of the people of the lands (ULT)
of the people who were already living in that area (UST)

You may need to make explicit what it was about the people of the land that made the Jews afraid. Alternate translation: “because they thought the people of the land wanted to attack them” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

They offered on it burnt offerings to Yahweh, both the morning and evening burnt offerings

One of the first things the people did was to begin offering sacrifices. This was before the temple was rebuilt.

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar
- dread
- to Yahweh
- because of the people of
- burnt offerings
- both...burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- Even though they were afraid
- They began to offer sacrifices
- of the people
- They began to offer sacrifices
- They began to offer sacrifices
Ezra 3:4

the Festival of Shelters (ULT)
the people celebrated the Festival of Shelters (UST)

This is a festival that was celebrated for eight days during the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It was associated with the time of the exodus when the Israelites lived in tents. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Festival of
• the ordinance
• and offered burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

• Festival
• the priests offered the sacrifices...were required for that
• Each day

ULT
4 They also observed the Festival of Shelters as it is written, and offered burnt offerings day by day according to the ordinance, as required for each day.

UST
4 Fifteen days after they started to offer these sacrifices, the people celebrated the Festival of Shelters, as Moses had commanded them to do in the decrees that God had given to him. Each day the priests offered the sacrifices that were required for that day.
Ezra 3:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• that were consecrated
• Yahweh
• to Yahweh
• the appointed festivals of
• who offered
• freewill offerings
• there were...burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

• They also brought other offerings only because they desired to bring them, not because they were required to bring them
• to honor Yahweh
• They also brought other offerings only because they desired to bring them, not because they were required to bring them
• and the offerings that were required for
• They also brought other offerings only because they desired to bring them, not because they were required to bring them
• They also brought other offerings only because they desired to bring them, not because they were required to bring them
• and the other festivals that they celebrated as special times each year

ULT
5 Afterwards, there were continual burnt offerings, and those for the new moons, and for all the appointed festivals of Yahweh that were consecrated, along with those of everyone who offered freewill offerings to Yahweh.

UST
5 In addition, they presented the regular burned offerings and the offerings that were required for the New Moon festivals and the other festivals that they celebrated as special times each year to honor Yahweh. They also brought other offerings only because they desired to bring them, not because they were required to bring them.
Ezra 3:6

from the first day of the...month (ULT)
at the beginning of autumn (UST)

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of September on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

although the temple of Yahweh had not been founded (ULT)
to Yahweh...they had not yet started building...the temple building (UST)

The Jews began the ceremonies of worship even before they started building the temple. Alternate translation: “they had not yet laid the foundation for the temple” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• to Yahweh
• Yahweh
• the temple of
• seventh
• had...been founded
• burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

• the temple building
• to Yahweh
• the temple building
• at the beginning of autumn
• they had...started building
• burned offerings
Ezra 3:7

according to the permission they had from King Cyrus of Persia (ULT)
King Cyrus permitted them to do that (UST)

The letters sent by Cyrus gave the Jews permission to buy materials and build the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- to the Sidonians
- to Joppa
- Lebanon
- Persia
- Cyrus
- and Tyre
- silver
- cedar
- and oil
- King...of

Translation Words - UST

- and Sidon
- to Joppa
- in Lebanon to the Mediterranean seacoast and then floated them along the coast of the sea
- King
- Cyrus
- from the people of Tyre
- hired
- cedar trees
- and olive oil as payment. They brought the logs down from the mountains
- King

ULT

7 So they gave silver to the masons and carpenters, and food, drink, and oil to the Sidonians and Tyre, to bring cedar logs by sea from Lebanon to Joppa, according to the permission they had from King Cyrus of Persia.

UST

7 So the Israelites hired masons and carpenters, and they bought logs from cedar trees from the people of Tyre and Sidon. They gave those people food, wine, and olive oil as payment. They brought the logs down from the mountains in Lebanon to the Mediterranean seacoast and then floated them along the coast of the sea to Joppa. King Cyrus permitted them to do that. Then the logs were brought from Joppa inland up to Jerusalem.
Then in the second year after they came to the house of God in Jerusalem, in the second month, Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua son of Jozadak, and the rest of their brothers the priests and the Levites, and all those who came from captivity to Jerusalem began the work. They assigned the Levites from twenty years old and older to oversee the work of Yahweh's house.

The Israelis started to rebuild the temple in the springtime of the second year after they returned to Jerusalem. Zerubbabel and Jeshua and all the people who had returned to Jerusalem worked on the building. They assigned the Levites twenty years old and older to supervise the work of Yahweh's house.
and...the people who
Zerubbabel
and Jeshua (2)
had returned to
The Israelis started to rebuild the temple
worked
Yahweh's house
and...the people who
and...the people who
They assigned the Levites
to Jerusalem
Jerusalem...on the building
Zerubbabel
after they returned
to supervise
The Israelis started to rebuild the temple
Yahweh's house
Ezra 3:9

Jeshua...Henadad (ULT)
Jeshua...Henadad (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Kadmiel (ULT)
and Kadmiel (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:40.

Translation Words - ULT
• and brothers
• and brothers
• with his sons
• and his sons
• sons of
• along with the sons of
• and their sons
• God
• Then arose
• on the house of
• Hodaviah
• the Levites
• to oversee

Translation Words - UST
• and his other relatives
• who were also all
• his sons
• and his sons, who were
• descendants of
• descendants of
• The people who were
• this work
• Jeshua
• this work
• Judah
• Levites
• to supervise the work

ULT
9 Then arose as one Jeshua with his sons and brothers, Kadmiel and his sons (sons of Hodaviah), to oversee the workmen, those working on the house of God, along with the sons of Henadad and their sons and brothers the Levites.

UST
9 Jeshua, his sons, and his other relatives, and Kadmiel and his sons, who were descendants of Judah, also helped to supervise the work. The people who were descendants of Henadad, who were also all Levites, joined with them in supervising this work.
Ezra 3:10

When the builders finished laying (ULT)
When the builders finished laying (UST)

“foundation” in this sense was more than just the stone blocks to support the temple walls. It included the entire temple floor set in stone. This enabled all the temple worshipers to wear their special garments and keep them clean.

in their garments (ULT)
put on their robes (UST)

“their special robes”

with cymbals (ULT)
clashed their cymbals to praise (UST)

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: Translate Unknowns)

the hands of David (ULT)
David...had many years previously told Asaph and...other musicians to do (UST)

The hand of a king is a metonym for the power to give commands. Alternate translation: “as David...had commanded” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the temple of
- the priests
- David
- and the Levites
- Asaph
- with trumpets
- king of
- to praise
- When...laid the foundation
- the hands of

Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- Yahweh
- had many years previously told Asaph and...other musicians to do
- King
- temple
- the priests
• David
• Then the Levites who were
• Asaph
• blowing their trumpets
• King
• just as
• When the builders finished laying
• had many years previously told Asaph and...other musicians to do
Ezra 3:11

and giving thanks (ULT)
They praised...and thanked him, and they sang this song about him (UST)

A feeling and expression of appreciation and gratitude for the kindness of another.

His covenant faithfulness to Israel is forever (ULT)
He is very good to us...He honors his covenant faithfulness for Israel, and he will love us forever (UST)

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithfully” or “faithful.” Alternate translation: “He faithfully loves Israel forever” or “He is always faithful to his covenant with Israel” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• His covenant faithfulness
• to Yahweh
• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• Israel
• he is good
• the people
• praising
• when they praised
• the foundation...had been laid
• of the house of

Translation Words - UST

• and he will love us forever
• Yahweh
• him
• temple
• Israel
• He is very good to us
• Then...the people
• They praised...and thanked him, and they sang this song about him
• praising
• they had finished laying the foundation of his
• temple

ULT
11 Then they sang, praising and giving thanks to Yahweh: “For he is good! His covenant faithfulness to Israel is forever.” All the people cried out with a great shout when they praised Yahweh because the foundation of the house of Yahweh had been laid.

UST
11 They praised Yahweh and thanked him, and they sang this song about him: “He is very good to us! He honors his covenant faithfulness for Israel, and he will love us forever.” Then all the people shouted loudly, praising him because they had finished laying the foundation of his temple.
Ezra 3:12

the first house (ULT)
the first temple...the (UST)

This refers to the first temple that Solomon built, the house of God. (See: Metonymy)

before their eyes (ULT)
as beautiful as the first temple (UST)

The people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they saw. Alternate translation: “in their sight” or “and they saw it” (See: Synecdoche)

wept with a loud voice (ULT)
and they cried aloud when they saw (UST)

This refers to emotional expression of sorrow involving tears and vocal sounds.

Translation Words - ULT

• the...house
• house
• from the priests
• and Levites
• the fathers
• and the heads of
• for joy
• when the foundation of...was laid

Translation Words - UST

• the...temple
• foundation of this temple being laid because they knew
• priests
• Levites
• and leaders of families
• was like

ULT
12 But many from the priests and Levites, and the heads of the fathers, the old men who had seen the first house, wept with a loud voice when the foundation of this house was laid before their eyes. But many people shouted for joy with a loud voice.

UST
12 Many of the old priests, Levites, and leaders of families remembered what the first temple was like, and they cried aloud when they saw the foundation of this temple being laid because they knew that the new temple would not be as beautiful as the first temple. But the other people shouted joyfully.
Ezra 3:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• the people
• the people
• the people (2)
• joy

Translation Words - UST

• were like one very loud sound that even
• people
• people (2)
• were like one very loud sound that even

ULT

13 So the people could not distinguish the sound of the shout of joy from the noise of the weeping of the people, for the people were crying out with a loud shout, and the sound was heard from far away.

3:9 There are some textual issues here regarding the phrase the sons of Judah or the descendants of Hodviah and other matters.

UST

13 The shouting and the crying were like one very loud sound that even people far away could hear.
Ezra 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of the building of the temple and re-establishment of the temple worship continues in this chapter. (See: temple)

Special concepts in this chapter

Helping to build the temple

The people of the surrounding nations offered to help to build the temple. It is unknown why the Jews refused their help. These other people became their enemies and tried to hinder the work. They even persuaded the king of Persia to stop the Jews from building.
Ezra 4:1

General Information:

The non-Jewish people offer to help build the temple.

the sons of the exiles (ULT)
they had returned from (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom the Babylonians had taken into exile” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• the God of
• Yahweh
• Israel
• the temple of
• Judah
• and Benjamin
• the enemies of
• the exiles
• the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• the God
• for Yahweh
• of Israel
• the temple
• Judah
• and Benjamin
• The enemies of the people of the tribes of
• they had returned
• from

ULT

¹ Now the enemies of Judah and Benjamin heard that the sons of the exiles were building the temple of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

¹ The enemies of the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin heard that they had returned from Babylonia and were rebuilding the temple for Yahweh, the God of Israel.
Ezra 4:2

Zerubbabel (ULT)
Zerubbabel the governor and to the other Jewish leaders (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

Esarhaddon king of Assyria (ULT)
Esarhaddon...king of Assyria (UST)

He ruled in Assyria before Cyrus ruled in Persia. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• your God
• Assyria
• Zerubbabel
• the fathers
• the heads of
• and...have sacrificed
• king of
• we seek

Translation Words - UST

• God whom you worship
• of Assyria
• Zerubbabel the governor and to the other Jewish leaders
• Zerubbabel the governor and to the other Jewish leaders
• Zerubbabel the governor and to the other Jewish leaders
• We have been offering sacrifices to him
• king
• worship

ULT
2 So they came to Zerubbabel and the heads of the fathers and said to them, “Let us build with you, for, like you, we seek your God and we have sacrificed to him since the days of Esarhaddon king of Assyria, who brought us here.”

UST
2 So they went to Zerubbabel the governor and to the other Jewish leaders and said to them, “We want to help you build the temple, because we worship the same God whom you worship. We have been offering sacrifices to him since Esarhaddon, the king of Assyria, brought us here.”
Ezra 4:3

and Jeshua (ULT)

Jeshua (UST)

This is a man’s name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:6.

You may not build a house for our God with us (ULT)

We will not allow you to help us build a temple (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the Jewish leader felt that Cyrus had authorized only them to build the temple or 2) building the temple was the exclusive work of the Jews and no non-Jew would be permitted to contribute to the work.

Translation Words - ULT

- commanded us
- for our God
- the God of
- for Yahweh
- Israel
- Persia
- Cyrus
- Zerubbabel
- the fathers of
- the heads of
- King
- king of
- a house

Translation Words - UST

- told
- you
- for our God
- Yahweh
- Jewish
- us to do
- of Persia
- as Cyrus
- Zerubbabel
- leaders
- leaders
- as Cyrus
- king
- a temple

ULT

3 But Zerubbabel, and Jeshua, and the rest of the heads of the fathers of Israel said to them, “You may not build a house for our God with us, for we alone will build for Yahweh, the God of Israel, just as King Cyrus, king of Persia, commanded us.”

UST

3 But Zerubbabel, Jeshua, and the other Jewish leaders replied, “We will not allow you to help us build a temple for our God. It is we alone who will build it for Yahweh, as Cyrus, king of Persia, told us to do.”
Ezra 4:4

the people of the land (ULT)
Then the people...who had been living in that land before the Israelites returned (UST)

“the people who were living in the land at that time,” which could include non-Jews and Jews whose families the Babylonians had not taken into exile

So...made...the hands of the people of Judah weak (ULT)
Then the people...tried to cause the Jews to become discouraged...so they would stop (UST)

This speaks of the people of the land discouraging the Judeans as if they made their hands physically weak. Alternate translation: "discouraged the Judeans" (See: Metaphor)

the people of...Judah (ULT)
Then the people...Jews (UST)

people who returned from Babylon and settled in the land of Judah

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- the hands of
- the people of
- the people of (2)
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- tried to cause the...to become discouraged...so they would stop
- Then the people
- tried to cause the...to become discouraged...so they would stop (2)
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
Ezra 4:5

Ult to frustrate their plans (ULT)
from continuing to work on the temple (UST)

“to make it so the Judeans could not build the temple as they had planned”

Translation Words - ULT

- Darius
- Persia
- Persia
- Cyrus
- king of
- king of
- counselors
- the reign of

Translation Words - UST

- and also when Darius became
- Cyrus
- of Persia
- Cyrus
- Cyrus
- king
- to prevent the Jews
- was king

ULT

5 They hired counselors against them to frustrate their plans, throughout the days of Cyrus king of Persia, and until the reign of Darius king of Persia.

UST

5 They bribed government officials to prevent the Jews from continuing to work on the temple. They did that all during the time that Cyrus was king of Persia and also when Darius became king.
Ezra 4:6

they wrote an accusation against the inhabitants of Judah and Jerusalem (ULT)
the enemies of the Jews wrote a letter to the king saying that the Jews were planning to rebel against the government (UST)

The abstract nouns “accusation” can be translated as a verb “accuse.” You may need to make explicit what the enemies accused the Judeans of doing. Alternate translation: “wrote a letter in which they accused those who lived in Judah and Jerusalem of disobeying the king” (See: Abstract Nouns and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Judah
• and Jerusalem
• Then in the reign of
• an accusation
• his reign

Translation Words - UST

• the Jews
• the Jews
• Then during
• the enemies of the Jews...saying that...were planning to rebel against the government
• was king
Ezra 4:7

Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel (ULT)
Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel (UST)

names of men (See: How to Translate Names)

the letter (ULT)
the letter (UST)

This is the letter spoken of in Ezra 4:6.

in Aramaic (ULT)
in the Aramaic (UST)

the language used in that area at the time for official business

and translated (ULT)
and it was translated (UST)

into Persian

Translation Words - ULT

- Artaxerxes
- Artaxerxes
- Persia
- king of

Translation Words - UST

- Ahasuerus' son Artaxerxes
- became king
- of Persia
- became king
Ezra 4:8

and Shimshai (ULT)
and Shimshai (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Rehum (ULT)
Rehum (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:1.

Translation Words - ULT

- the scribe
- to...Artaxerxes
- Jerusalem
- King
- the commander

Translation Words - UST

- the provincial secretary
- Artaxerxes
- what was happening in Jerusalem
- King
- the high commissioner

ULT
8 Rehum the commander and Shimshai the scribe wrote a letter against Jerusalem to King Artaxerxes as follows:

UST
8 Rehum, the high commissioner, and Shimshai, the provincial secretary, wrote the letter to King Artaxerxes concerning what was happening in Jerusalem.
Ezra 4:9

Rehum...and Susa (ULT)
They stated that the letter was from...and Susa (UST)

names of cities (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• the scribe
• Babylon
• the Elamites
• Persians
• the commander

Translation Words - UST

• the judges, and other government officials
• Babylon
• in the district of Elam
• the judges, and other government officials
• and their associates

ULT
9 Rehum the commander, and Shimshai the scribe, and the rest of their companions—judges and rulers, officials, Persians, men from Erech, Babylon, and Susa (that is, the Elamites),

UST
9 They stated that the letter was from Rehum, Shimshai, and their associates, the judges, and other government officials, who were from Erech, Babylon, and Susa in the district of Elam.
Ezra 4:10

Ashurbanipal (ULT)
Ashurbanipal (UST)

This is a name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

and...in the Province Beyond the River (ULT)
in Samaria...west of the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• in Samaria
• took captive
• the nations
• and noble

Translation Words - UST

• in Samaria
• had deported and sent to live
• the other people groups
• and glorious

ULT
10 and the rest of the nations whom the great and noble Ashurbanipal took captive and settled in the cities that are in Samaria, and also in the Province Beyond the River.

UST
10 They also wrote that they represented the other people groups whom the army of the great and glorious Ashurbanipal had deported and sent to live in Samaria and in other cities in the province west of the Euphrates River.
Ezra 4:11

This is a copy of the letter (ULT)
This is what they wrote in the letter (UST)

Ezra includes in his writing the content of the letter sent to King Artaxerxes.

men of the Province Beyond the River (ULT)
and comes from the officials serving...west of the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated this in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Artaxerxes
• Your servants

Translation Words - UST

• Artaxerxes
• King
• and comes from the officials serving
Ezra 4:12

the rebellious and evil city (ULT)
The city of Jerusalem. These people are wicked and want to rebel against you (UST)

The city is a metonym for the people who live in it. Alternate translation: “a city that they plan to live in and rebel against you” (See: Metonymy)

and repairing the foundations (ULT)
They are now repairing the foundations of the walls (UST)

“fixed the foundations” or “mended the foundations”

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• and evil
• in Jerusalem
• rebellious
• to the king
• and...the foundations
• known

Translation Words - UST

• the Jews
• These people are wicked
• are rebuilding
• and want to rebel against you
• Your Majesty
• the foundations of the walls
• we want you to know

ULT

12 let it be known to the king that the Jews who went from you have come to us in Jerusalem. They are rebuilding the rebellious and evil city, completing the walls, and repairing the foundations.

UST

12 “Your Majesty, we want you to know that the Jews who came here from your territories are rebuilding the city of Jerusalem. These people are wicked and want to rebel against you. They are now repairing the foundations of the walls and building the walls of the city.
Ezra 4:13

if this city is built and the wall is completed (ULT)
if they rebuild the city and finish building the walls, they will stop paying (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “if they build the city and complete the wall” (See: Active or Passive)

and the treasury of the king will suffer loss (ULT)
less money in your treasury (UST)

The word “harm” refers to the Judeans no longer giving money to the kings.

Translation Words - ULT

- tax
- or custom
- or tribute
- to the king
- the king
- known

Translation Words - UST

- any taxes
- any taxes
- any taxes
- It is important for you to
  - in your treasury
  - know

ULT
13 Now let it be known to the king that if this city is built and the wall is completed, they will not give tax, or tribute, or custom, and the treasury of the king will suffer loss.

UST
13 It is important for you to know that if they rebuild the city and finish building the walls, they will stop paying any taxes. As a result, there will be less money in your treasury.
Ezra 4:14

we have eaten the salt of the palace (ULT)
we are loyal to (UST)

Possible meanings are that this refers to 1) the writers being loyal to the king or 2) the king giving the writers special honors. Alternate translation: “we are loyal to you” or “you have honored us by making us your officials” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the palace
- the king
- the king
- the dishonor of

Translation Words - UST

- we are loyal to
- you
- you
- we are loyal to

ULT

14 Now according to all this, because we have eaten the salt of the palace, it is not fitting for us to see the dishonor of the king. On account of this we have sent and informed the king

UST

14 Now, because we are loyal to you, and because we do not want you to be humiliated, we are sending this information to you.
Ezra 4:15

is a rebellious city (ULT)
have always rebelled against the government (UST)

The city is a metonym for the people who live in it. Alternate translation: “a city in which live people who have rebelled against your father” (See: Metonymy)

data-field-15

this city was destroyed (ULT)
That is the reason that this city was destroyed by the Babylonian army (UST)

This can be translated in active form, in which case you will need to make explicit who destroyed the city. The “city” represents the people who live in it. Alternate translation: “the Babylonians destroyed the city” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• your father
• was destroyed
• and provinces
• rebellious
• to kings

Translation Words - UST

• by your ancestors
• was destroyed by the Babylonian army
• provinces
• have always rebelled against the government
• You will also find out that

ULT

15 so that a search may be made in the record books of your father. You will discover in the record book and understand that this city is a rebellious city and harmful to kings and provinces, and that they have incited revolts within the city in past days. On account of that, this city was destroyed.

UST

15 And, we suggest that you order your officials to search among the records kept by your ancestors. If you do that, you will find out that the people in this city have always rebelled against the government. You will also find out that from long ago these people caused trouble for kings and for rulers of provinces. They have always revolted against those who ruled them. That is the reason that this city was destroyed by the Babylonian army.
Ezra 4:16

if this city is rebuilt and its walls are completed (ULT)
if they rebuild this city and finish building its walls (UST)

This can be translated in active form. See how you translated these words in Ezra 4:13. Alternate translation: “If they build the city and wall” (See: Active or Passive)

control...you will have no (ULT)
in...province...you will no longer be able to control (UST)

Here “nothing” is an exaggeration to make the king think that he will be losing much tax money if the Judeans rebel. (See: Hyperbole)

in the Province Beyond the River (ULT)
west of the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated this in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• control
• the king
• are informing

Translation Words - UST

• in...province
• you
• to know
Ezra 4:17

and the Province Beyond the River (ULT) in Samaria...province...is west of the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated this in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Rehum (ULT) Rehum (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:2.

and Shimshai (ULT) and Shimshai (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 4:8.

the River (ULT) River (UST)

the Euphrates River

Translation Words - ULT

• the scribe
• the king
• in Samaria
• Peace
• a reply
• the commander

Translation Words - UST

• the provincial secretary
• king
• in Samaria
• I send my greetings
• After the...read this letter
• the high commissioner

ULT

17 So the king sent a reply: “To Rehum the commander, and Shimshai the scribe, and the rest of their companions who live in Samaria, and the Province Beyond the River, Peace. And now

UST

17 After the king read this letter, he sent this reply to them: “To you Rehum, the high commissioner, and Shimshai, the provincial secretary, and their colleagues in Samaria and in other parts of the province that is west of the Euphrates River, I send my greetings.
Ezra 4:18

the letter that you sent me has been translated and read (ULT)
The letter that you sent to me was translated and read (UST)

This can be translated in active form, in which case you will need to make explicit who translated and read the letter to the king. Alternate translation: “I have had my servants translate and read the letter that you sent to me” (See: Active or Passive)
Ezra 4:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- issued
- and revolt
- kings
- a decree

Translation Words - UST

- I ordered
- revolted against
- their rulers, and that the city
- my officials

ULT

19 So I issued a decree, and a search was made, and it was discovered that in former days this city has rebelled against kings and revolt and rebellion has been made in it.

UST

19 So then, I ordered my officials to search the records. I have found out that it is true that the people of that city have always revolted against their rulers, and that the city is full of people who have rebelled and caused trouble.
Ezra 4:20

over all the Province Beyond the River (ULT)
and they also ruled over the whole province west of the Euphrates River...all (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated this in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Tax,tribute, and custom were paid to them (ULT)
They forced the people there to pay them...kinds of taxes (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “The people in Jerusalem paid tribute and taxes to those kings” or “Those kings were able to collect tribute and taxes” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jerusalem
• mighty
• and custom
• who have ruled
• tribute
• kings

Translation Words - UST

• in Jerusalem
• powerful
• to pay them
• ruled
• They forced the people there
• kings
Ezra 4:21

give a command (ULT)
you must command (UST)

“make a law”

Translation Words - ULT

• give
• is given
• a command
• a command

Translation Words - UST

• you must command
• Only if I tell them
• Only if I tell them
• you must command

ULT
21 Now, give a command to cause these men to stop, that this city may not be rebuilt until a command is given by me.

UST
21 So you must command that the people must stop rebuilding the city. Only if I tell them that they may rebuild it will they be allowed to continue.
Ezra 4:22

Be careful that you do not neglect (ULT)
Do...immediately (UST)

The litotes “not to neglect” is an understatement to emphasize that the writers want Artaxerxes to do what they tell him to do. Alternate translation: “Be careful to do this” (See: Litotes)

Why should this damage increase, to the hurt of the kings (ULT)
I do not want those people...anything to harm the things about which I am concerned (UST)

Artaxerxes uses a question to tell them that he understands that he will lose taxes and honor if the city is built. Alternate translation: “You must make sure that this threat does not grow and cause more loss for the royal interests.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

should this damage increase (ULT)
anything to harm (UST)

Danger is spoken of as if it were a plant that could increase in size. Alternate translation: “danger to become worse” (See: Metaphor)

to the hurt of the kings (ULT)
to harm...the things about which I am concerned (UST)

The words “the royal interests” are a metonym for the king himself. Alternate translation: “cause more bad things to happen to the kings” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• the kings

Translation Words - UST

• the things about which I am concerned
Ezra 4:23

the copy of the letter from King Artaxerxes was read (ULT)
that letter...and read it to them (UST)

This can be translated in active form, in which case you will need to make explicit who read the decree from the king to the officials. Alternate translation: “The messengers from King Artaxerxes read his decree” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Rehum (ULT)
Rehum (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 2:1.

and Shimshai (ULT)
and Shimshai (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 4:7.

Translation Words - ULT

• the scribe
• the Jews
• Artaxerxes
• to Jerusalem
• King

Translation Words - UST

• Then Rehum and the others
• the Jews
• that letter
• to Jerusalem
• it to them
Ezra 4:24

the work on the house of God which is in Jerusalem ceased, and it remained stopped until the second year of the reign of Darius (ULT) that the Jews stopped rebuilding the temple. They did not do any more work to rebuild the temple until the second year after Darius became the king of Persia.

This delay lasted about 16 years.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Darius
- Persia
- in Jerusalem
- the reign of
- king of
- the work
- on the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the temple
- after Darius
- of Persia
- the Jews
- became the
- king
- rebuilding
- the temple
Ezra 5

Ezra 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of the building of the temple and re-establishment of the temple worship continues in this chapter. (See: temple)

Special concepts in this chapter

Rebuilding the temple

The prophets Haggai and Zechariah encouraged the Jews to begin again building the temple. This was very important to life in Judah. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)
Ezra 5:1

Iddo (ULT)
of Iddo (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- son of
- Then...prophesied
- the prophet
- prophets
- the God of
- in the name of
- Israel
- in Judah
- and Zechariah
- and Jerusalem
- Haggai

Translation Words - UST

- to the Jews
- who was a descendant
- At that time...were giving messages from God
- two prophets
- They spoke those messages
- worshiped
- worshiped
- of Israel
- the people
- and Zechariah
- in Jerusalem and other cities in Judah
- The prophets were Haggai

ULT

1 Then Haggai the prophet and Zechariah son of Iddo, prophets to the Jews who were in Judah and Jerusalem, prophesied in the name of the God of Israel who was over them.

UST

1 At that time two prophets were giving messages from God to the Jews in Jerusalem and other cities in Judah. The prophets were Haggai and Zechariah, who was a descendant of Iddo. They spoke those messages representing the God that the people of Israel worshiped.
Ezra 5:2

and Jeshua...Jozadak (ULT)  
and Shealtiel...and Shealtiel (UST)  

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shealtiel (ULT)  
and Shealtiel (UST)  

This is a man’s name. See how you translated this in Ezra 3:1.

to build the house of God (ULT)  
to rebuild the temple of God...And God’s (UST)  

This was the temple of God.

Translation Words - ULT

- of...son
- son...of (2)
- the prophets
- God
- God (2)
- in Jerusalem
- Zerubbabel
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Zerubbabel
- and Shealtiel (2)
- prophets Haggai and Zechariah
- And God’s
- prophets Haggai and Zechariah (2)
- in Jerusalem
- Zerubbabel
- the temple of God
Ezra 5:3

Tattenai...and Shethar-Bozenai (ULT)
Tattenai...and Shethar-Bozenai (UST)

men's names (See: How to Translate Names)

the Province Beyond the River (ULT)
west of the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated it in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- issued
- a decree
- house
- the governor of

Translation Words - UST

- has permitted you
- has permitted you
- temple
- the governor of the province

ULT
3 At that time, Tattenai, the governor of the Province Beyond the River, and Shethar-Bozenai, and their associates came to them and said to them thus, “Who issued you a decree to build this house and to complete this wall?”

UST
3 But Tattenai, the governor of the province west of the Euphrates River, and Shethar-Bozenai, his assistant, together with some of their officials went to Jerusalem and said to the people, “Who has permitted you to rebuild this temple?”
Ezra 5:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- the names of

**Translation Words - UST**

- the names

ULT

4 Then they also asked them, “What are the names of the men who are building this building?”

UST

4 They also asked the Jews to tell them the names of the men who were working on the temple.
Ezra 5:5

But the eye of God was on (ULT)
However, God was taking care of (UST)

The eye represents the person watching over another person. Alternate translation: “God was watching over” (See: Synecdoche)

a report could be sent to Darius and a decree was returned concerning this matter (ULT)
They were waiting...for King Darius to make a royal decree that would either give them permission and his protection so they could finish their work on the temple, or stop their work completely (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “for an official to send a letter to the king and for the king to send a letter back to them with a decree” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jews
- God
- to Darius
- the elders of
- a report

Translation Words - UST

- Jewish
- However, God was taking care of
- for King Darius
- the...leaders
- They were waiting
Ezra 5:6

This is a copy of the letter (ULT)
a report (UST)

Ezra includes the contents of the letter to King Darius regarding their work on the temple.

governor of the Province Beyond the River (ULT)
Tattenai...and their officials (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated this in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Darius
• officials
• the king
• governor of the Province

Translation Words - UST

• Darius
• Shethar-Bozenai
• King
• Tattenai...and their officials
Ezra 5:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• to...Darius
• King
• peace
• a report

Translation Words - UST

• Darius
• King
• are going well for you
• This

ULT
7 They sent a report to him, in which was written thus, “All peace to King Darius.

UST
7 This is what they wrote: “King Darius, we hope that things are going well for you.
Ezra 5:8

General Information:
The letter from Tattenai to the king that began in Ezra 5:7 continues.

and timbers (ULT)
wooden (UST)

wood for building

Translation Words - ULT

• are being set
• the...God
• to the house of
• Judah
• in their hands
• to the province of
• to the king
• known

Translation Words - UST

• and they are putting...beams
• the temple
• the temple
• The people are building it
• are progressing well
• to Judah, where
• you
• to know

ULT
8 Let it be known to the king that we went to the province of Judah to the house of the great God that is being built with large stones, and timbers are being set in the walls. This work is going on diligently and is succeeding in their hands.

UST
8 We want you to know that we went to Judah, where the temple of the great God is being rebuilt. The people are building it with huge stones, and they are putting wooden beams in the walls. The work is being done very carefully, and they are progressing well.
Ezra 5:9

Who issued you a command (ULT)
Who...has permitted you (UST)

"Who gave you permission"

Translation Words - ULT

- issued
- a command
- house
- elders

Translation Words - UST

- has permitted you
- has permitted you
- temple
- the Jewish leaders

ULT
9 Then we asked these elders, and spoke to them thus, 'Who issued you a command to build this house and to complete this wall?'

UST
9 We asked the Jewish leaders, 'Who has permitted you to rebuild this temple?'
Ezra 5:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- their names
- the names of
- chief among them

Translation Words - UST

- them
- the names of
- their leaders

ULT 10 We also asked them their names to inform you, so that we might write the names of the men who were chief among them.

UST 10 We also requested them to tell us the names of their leaders, in order that we could tell you who they were.
Ezra 5:11

General Information:
The letter from Tattenai to the king that began in Ezra 5:7 continues.

We are servants of the God of (ULT)
they...We serve the God (UST)

Possible meaning are 1) they were calling the Jewish people servants of God or 2) those who replied were from the tribe of Levi and Aaron, who were the ones actually responsible for the temple worship and sacrifices.

that was built many years ago, which a great king of Israel built and completed (ULT)
Many years ago a great king of Israel told our ancestors...here, and now we are rebuilding it (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the great king of Israel had built and supplied all the equipment for” (See: Active or Passive)

and completed (ULT)
here, and now we are rebuilding it (UST)

“supplied all the equipment for it”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- the God of
- Israel
- the house
- a...king of
- servants
- an answer

Translation Words - UST

- who created the heaven
- God
- of Israel
- a temple
- king
- serve
- of...us their leaders' names
Ezra 5:12

General Information:

The letter from Tattenai to the king continues. Tattenai continues to tell the king what the Judeans had told him beginning in Ezra 5:11.

provoked...to wrath...the God of heaven (ULT)
did things that caused God to become very angry...
God...in heaven (UST)

“made the God of heaven become very angry with us”

he gave them into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, the Chaldean, who destroyed this house and deported the people

The hand is a metonym for power or control. Also, “Nebuchadnezzar” represents his army. Alternate translation: “allowed the army of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, the Chaldean, to destroy this house and to take the people” (See: Metonymy)

who destroyed this house (ULT)
to destroy...temple (UST)

“tore down this house”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- the God of
- provoked...to wrath
- house
- Babylon
- to Babylon
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- Nebuchadnezzar
- our fathers
- into the hand of
- deported
- and...the people
- who destroyed
- king of

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- God
- did things that caused God to become very angry
- temple
- of Babylonia
- to Babylonia
- Chaldea, Chaldean
the armies of Nebuchadnezzar
because our ancestors
who rules
took many
of the Israelite people
to destroy
king
Ezra 5:13

King Cyrus issued a command to rebuild this house of God (ULT)

Nevertheless, in the first year of Cyrus king of Babylon (ULT)

Cyrus ordered that the people rebuild God's temple.

Translation Words - ULT

• issued
• God
• Babylon
• Cyrus
• Cyrus
• king
• King
• a command
• house of

Translation Words - UST

• decreed that
• the temple of God
• of Babylon
• Cyrus
• he
• king
• started to rule
• decreed that
• the temple of God

ULT

13 Nevertheless, in the first year of Cyrus king of Babylon, King Cyrus issued a command to rebuild this house of God.

UST

13 However, during the first year that Cyrus king of Babylon started to rule, he decreed that the temple of God should be rebuilt.
Ezra 5:14

General Information:

The letter from Tattenai to the king that began in Ezra 5:7 continues. Tattenai continues to tell the king what the Judeans had told him beginning in (Ezra 5:11).

to one...Sheshbazzar (ULT)
to a man named Sheshbazzar (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 1:7.

and gave them (ULT)
whom King Cyrus appointed (UST)

King Cyrus returned the temple objects.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- named
- the temple
- to the temple
- the temple (2)
- Babylon
- Babylon
- Cyrus
- in Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- and silver
- King
- gold
- governor
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Temple of God
- and
- temple
- the
- the temple (2)
- Babylon
- that
- Cyrus
- in Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- and silver
- King
- gold
- as governor
- Temple of God

ULT

14 Also the objects of gold and silver of the house of God that Nebuchadnezzar had taken from the temple that was in Jerusalem and they brought to the temple in Babylon, these King Cyrus took from the temple in Babylon and gave them to one named Sheshbazzar, whom he had made governor.

UST

14 King Cyrus returned the gold and silver cups that Nebuchadnezzar had taken from the Temple of God in Jerusalem and had placed in the temple of Babylon. These cups were taken from that temple and presented to a man named Sheshbazzar, whom King Cyrus appointed as governor of Judah.
and let the house of God be rebuilt (ULT)  
should rebuild the temple (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “I want the Judeans to rebuild the house of God” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• God
• in the temple
• and...the house of
• in Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST
• the temple
• to the place from where they had been taken. He also decreed...they
• the temple
• Jerusalem
Ezra 5:16

General Information:

The letter from Tattenai to the king that began in Ezra 5:7 continues. Tattenai continues to tell the king what the Judeans had told him beginning in (Ezra 5:11).

it has been under construction, but is not complete (ULT)
the people have been working on the temple, but it is not finished yet (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “people are now constructing it, but they have not done all the work yet” (See: Active or Passive)

it has been under construction (ULT)
the people have been working on the temple (UST)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- in Jerusalem
- the foundation
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the temple
- here to Jerusalem
- the men who...the foundation
- the temple

ULT
16 Then this Sheshbazzar came and laid the foundation for the house of God which is in Jerusalem; but from then even until now it has been under construction, but is not complete.’

UST
16 So Sheshbazzar did that. He came here to Jerusalem and supervised the men who laid the foundation of the temple. And since that time, the people have been working on the temple, but it is not finished yet.’
Ezra 5:17

General Information:

The letter from Tattenai to the king that began in Ezra 5:7 continues. Tattenai has finished telling the king what the Judeans told him and now asks the king to see if what the Judeans told him was true.

let a search be made (ULT)
search (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “I would like you to have someone investigate this matter” (See: Active or Passive)

if it is so that a command was issued by King Cyrus (ULT)
in...the...are kept...find out whether it is true...King Cyrus decreed...should be (UST)

“if there is a record there that King Cyrus issued a law”

Translation Words - ULT

- was issued
- God
- in Babylon
- Cyrus
- in Jerusalem
- the king
- the king (2)
- King
- the king
- a command
- in the...house
- house of

Translation Words - UST

- find out whether it is true
- God's
- in Babylon
- Cyrus decreed
- in Jerusalem
- your Majesty
- Then you can tell us what (2)
- King
- you
- should be
- the place
- temple
Ezra 6

Ezra 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The completion of the story of the building of the temple and re-establishment of the temple worship occurs in this chapter. (See: temple)

Special concepts in this chapter

Temple taxes

The king said the Jews were right and ordered money from his taxes to be used to help them with their sacrifices.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Darius

In this chapter, Darius is called the king of Assyria. In reality, besides ruling over the former Assyrian Empire, Darius was also king of Persia. Persia had conquered Babylon, which had previously conquered Assyria. This made the king of Persia, the king of Assyria as well. It was unusual to refer to Darius as the king or ruler of Assyria. Ezra may have referred to him in this way to contrast Darius’ actions with those of the former rulers of Assyria, who had treated the Jews very cruelly. It was those earlier Assyrian rulers who had conquered the northern tribes of Israel and deported them to other lands. It was for this reasons that the northern tribes lost their identity and were no longer a distinct people group.
Ezra 6:1

issued a command and a search was made (ULT)
commanded someone to search (UST)

The abstract noun “investigation” can be expressed with the verbs “investigate” or “search.” Alternate translation: “ordered his officials to investigate” or “ordered his officials to search” (See: Abstract Nouns)

issued a command and a search was made (ULT)
commanded someone to search (UST)

What they were to investigate can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “ordered his officials to investigate the records” or “ordered his officials to search and find out if there was a record of King Cyrus telling the Jews to build the house of God in Jerusalem” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in the archives where the treasures were stored (ULT)
in the place...important records were kept, but those documents were not there (UST)

This is a building where the king's officials kept the important government records.

Translation Words - ULT

• issued
• in Babylon
• Darius
• King
• a command
• in

Translation Words - UST

• commanded
• in Babylon
• Darius
• King
• commanded
• in the place
Ezra 6:2

In the fortress at Ecbatana that is in the province of Media, a scroll was found, and thus was the record written in it:

They found a scroll in the fortress city of Ecbatana in Media that contained the information that they wanted to know. This is what was written on that scroll:

Translation Words - ULT

- Media
- In the fortress
- in the province of
- scroll

Translation Words - UST

- in Media
- in the fortress
- in Media
- a scroll
Ezra 6:3

General Information:
This begins the record of King Cyrus’s command that the Jews rebuild God’s temple in Jerusalem.

In the first year of King Cyrus (ULT)
During the first year that Cyrus ruled the empire, he sent out (UST)

It can be stated clearly that this is the first year of his reign. Alternate translation: “In year 1 of the reign of King Cyrus” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Numbers)

Let the house be rebuilt (ULT)
build…temple (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Let the Jews rebuild the house” or “The Jews must rebuild the house” (See: Active or Passive)

sixty cubits (ULT)
The temple must be twenty-seven meters (UST)

“60 cubits.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “twenty-seven meters” (See: Numbers and Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• issued
• God
• Cyrus
• in Jerusalem
• sacrifices
• King
• King
• and...its foundations
• a command
• about the house of
• the house

Translation Words - UST

• concerning the
• God
• he sent out
• that Cyrus ruled the empire
• that was in Jerusalem. He said...they must
• had previously offered
• that Cyrus ruled the empire
• that Cyrus ruled the empire
• the original foundation of the first temple was
• a decree
• temple of...a new
• temple
Ezra 6:4

with three rows of large stones and a row of new timber (ULT)
The building must be made from large stones. After putting down three layers of stones, a layer of timber must be put on top of them...the (UST)

This can be stated as a new sentence. Possible meanings are 1) this describes how to build the foundation. Alternate translation: “Build the foundation on three layers of large stones covered with one layer of timber” or 2) this describes how to build the walls. Alternate translation: “Build the house's walls with three layers of large stones alternating with one layer of timber” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and let the cost be paid by the house of the king (ULT)
This work will be paid for by money from...royal treasury (UST)

The phrase “the king's house” represents King Cyrus's own wealth in the royal treasury. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will pay for it with money from the royal treasury” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• the king
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• royal
• treasury
Ezra 6:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the temple
- to the temple
- to Babylon
- in Jerusalem
- in Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- and silver
- the gold
- the house
- in the house of

Translation Words - UST

- of God
- God's
- the temple
- Jerusalem
- to Babylon
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar
- and silver
- gold
- from
- temple

ULT

5 Now let the gold and silver objects of the house of God, which Nebuchadnezzar took from the temple which is in Jerusalem and brought to Babylon, be restored and returned to the temple which is in Jerusalem, and deposit each in its place in the house of God.'

UST

5 Also, the gold and silver objects that King Nebuchadnezzar took from the temple of God in Jerusalem and brought to Babylon must be taken back to Jerusalem. They must be once again put into God's temple.”
Ezra 6:6

General Information:

This continues the record of King Cyrus's command that the Jews rebuild God's temple in Jerusalem, which began in Ezra 6:3.

Tattenai...Shethar-Bozenai (ULT)
This is a message for Tattenai...Shethar-Bozenai (UST)

Darius writes directly to these men. Translate their names as in Ezra 5:3. (See: How to Translate Names)

and your associates...Beyond...in the Province...the River (ULT)
and for his assistant...west of the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated it in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• and officials
• governor of the Province

Translation Words - UST

• and for all your colleagues
• the governor of the province
Ezra 6:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Jews
• the Jews
• God
• God
• and the elders of
• the governor of
• house of
• house of (2)

Translation Words - UST

• or their
• And do not hinder the governor of the Jews
• of God
• The temple
• elders
• while they
• temple
• temple was (2)

ULT

7 Leave the work of this house of God alone. Let the governor of the Jews and the elders of the Jews build this house of God on its place.

UST

7 Do not interfere with the work of building the temple of God. The temple must be rebuilt at the same place where the former temple was. And do not hinder the governor of the Jews or their elders while they are doing this work.
Ezra 6:8

General Information:

This continues the record of King Cyrus's command that the Jews rebuild God's temple in Jerusalem, which began in Ezra 6:3.

Let...cost be paid diligently at the expense of the king from the taxes beyond the River (ULT)
my treasury among you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Use funds from the king's tribute beyond the river to pay these men" (See: Active or Passive)

at the expense of the king from the taxes beyond the River (ULT)
among you (UST)

“The king's tribute” refers to taxes that people pay the king. Alternate translation: "Money from the taxes that you collect for the king from the people beyond the river" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• am issuing
• the jews
• God
• the...taxes
• elders of
• king...the
• a decree
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• I command
• Jews
• of God
• you
• leaders
• you
• I command
• temple
Ezra 6:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Heaven
- and lambs
- young
- to the God of
- the priests
- in Jerusalem
- bulls
- and oil
- wheat
- and rams
- wine
- for the burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

- of heaven
- and lambs
- young
- to the God
- Also, you must be certain to give them
- in Jerusalem
- bulls
- and olive oil
- the wheat
- and rams
- wine
- to sacrifice as they make burned offerings

ULT

9 Whatever is needed—young bulls, and rams, and lambs for the burnt offerings to the God of Heaven, wheat, salt, wine, and oil according to the command of the priests who are in Jerusalem—must be given to them day by day without fail,

UST

9 The Jewish priests in Jerusalem need young bulls and rams and lambs to sacrifice as they make burned offerings to the God of heaven. You must give them the animals that they need. Also, you must be certain to give them the wheat, salt, wine, and olive oil that they need each day for those sacrifices.
Ezra 6:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Heaven
- and his sons
- to the God of
- and pray
- offer...sacrifices
- the king

**Translation Words - UST**

- who is in heaven
- and my sons
- the God
- and they will pray
- they will be able to offer sacrifices
- me

ULT

10 so that they may offer sweet-smelling sacrifices to the God of Heaven and pray for the life of the king, and his sons.

UST

10 If you do that, they will be able to offer sacrifices that please the God who is in heaven, and they will pray that God will bless me and my sons.
Ezra 6:11

General Information:

This continues the record of King Cyrus's command that the Jews rebuild God's temple in Jerusalem, which began in Ezra 6:3.

a beam must be pulled from his house and stood up and he must be impaled on it. His house must be turned into a rubbish heap because of this (ULT) my soldiers will pull a beam from his house...and impale him on that beam. Then they will completely destroy that man's house until only a pile of rubble is left (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “I command my officials to pull a beam from his house and impale him on it. They are then to turn his house into a rubbish heap” (See: Active or Passive)

a beam (ULT)
a beam (UST)

a long, sturdy piece of wood, supporting the roof of a house

and he must be impaled (ULT)
and impale (UST)

pierced through

Translation Words - ULT

- am issuing
- and he must be impaled
- a decree
- edict
- his house
- His house

Translation Words - UST

- that
- and impale
- that
- decree
- his house
- from...that man's house

ULT

11 I am issuing a decree that any man who changes this edict, a beam must be pulled from his house and stood up and he must be impaled on it. His house must be turned into a rubbish heap because of this.

UST

11 If anyone disobeys this decree, my soldiers will pull a beam from his house. Then they will lift that man up and impale him on that beam. Then they will completely destroy that man's house until only a pile of rubble is left.
Ezra 6:12

who extends their hand to change it, or to destroy (ULT)
What I desire is that...that tries to change this decree or tries to destroy (UST)

Lifting the hand represents trying or daring to do something. Alternate translation: “who tries to change...or to destroy” or “who dares to change...or to destroy” (See: Metonymy)

to change it (ULT)
change this decree (UST)

The abstract noun “decree” can be expressed with the phrase “what I have decreed.” Alternate translation: “to change what I have decreed” or “to say that I have decreed something else” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• am issuing
• the God
• God
• his name
• Darius
• in Jerusalem
• their hand
• or people
• May...overthrow
• or to destroy
• king
• a decree
• house of

Translation Words - UST

• have made
• God
• temple
• city of Jerusalem as the place
• Darius
• in Jerusalem
• that tries to
• people will honor him
• he will get rid of
• or tries to destroy
• king or any nation
• decree
• temple
Ezra 6:13

Tattenai…and Shethar-Bozenai (ULT)
Tattenai…and his assistant Shethar-Bozenai (UST)

Translate the names of these men as you did in Ezra 5:3. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Darius
• King
• the governor of the Province

Translation Words - UST

• Darius
• King
• the governor

ULT
13 Then Tattenai, the governor of the Province Beyond the River, and Shethar-Bozenai, and their associates, diligently did thus, according to what King Darius had sent.

UST
13 Tattenai, the governor of the province, and his assistant Shethar-Bozenai and their colleagues read the message and immediately obeyed the decree of King Darius.
Ezra 6:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the decree of
- and by the decree of
- the Jews
- son of
- through the prophesying of
- the prophet
- the God of
- Israel
- and Artaxerxes
- and Darius
- and Zechariah
- Persia
- Cyrus
- Haggai
- So the elders of
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- had...them to do
- commanded
- Jewish
- and Zechariah preached
- They were greatly encouraged...the messages that the
- prophets
- God
- The Israelites...the temple, just as
- Darius
- Darius
- and Zechariah preached
- had decreed
- and as King Cyrus and
- Haggai
- So the...leaders
- King
Ezra 6:15

So this house was completed (ULT)
They finished building it (UST)

This can be translated in active form. You may need to make explicit which house they completed. Alternate translation: “They completed God's house” or “They finished building the temple” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the third day of the month of Adar (ULT)
third day of the month of Adar (UST)

“Adar” is the name of the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season. The third day is near the middle of February on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and How to Translate Names and Ordinal Numbers)

in the sixth year of (ULT)
the sixth year (UST)

King Darius had been ruling for five years, so he was now in year number six of his reign. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• house
• Darius
• the reign of
• King

Translation Words - UST

• building it
• Darius
• ruled
• King
Ezra 6:16

and the rest of the children of the exile (ULT)
and all the other...people who had returned from Babylon (UST)

These people had been captured and taken to Babylon, but they returned to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “the rest of the people who had been taken captive to Babylon and had returned to Jerusalem” or “the rest of the people who had returned from captivity” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- God
- Israel
- the priests
- and the Levites
- the exile
- the children of
- with joy
- the dedication of
- house of

Translation Words - UST

- Then
- the temple
- Israelite
- the priests
- and the Levites
- people who had returned...Babylon
- from
- joyfully
- dedicated
- the temple

ULT
16 Then the sons of Israel, the priests, and the Levites, and the rest of the children of the exile celebrated the dedication of this house of God with joy.

UST
16 Then the priests and the Levites and all the other Israelite people who had returned from Babylon joyfully dedicated the temple.
Ezra 6:17

one hundred bulls...and four hundred lambs (ULT)
one hundred young bulls...and four hundred lambs (UST)

“100 bulls...400 lambs” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- and...lambs
- God
- Israel
- Israel
- bulls
- goats
- they offered
- For the dedication of
- rams
- the tribes of
- house of

Translation Words - UST

- lambs
- God
- of the people of
- of Israel
- young bulls
- goats
- During the ceremony to dedicate
- During the ceremony to dedicate
- rams
- tribes
- the temple

ULT

17 For the dedication of this house of God, they offered one hundred bulls, two hundred rams, and four hundred lambs, and twelve male goats as a sin offering for all Israel, according to the number of the tribes of Israel.

UST

17 During the ceremony to dedicate the temple, they sacrificed one hundred young bulls, one hundred rams, and four hundred lambs. They also sacrificed twelve male goats as an offering so that God would forgive the sins of the people of the twelve tribes of Israel.
Ezra 6:18

to their divisions (ULT)
into groups that would take turns (UST)

“groups that work together”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• in the book of Moses
• the priests
• and the Levites
• in Jerusalem
• the service of

Translation Words - UST

• the temple
• Moses...many years previously in the laws...he wrote
• the priests
• and Levites
• They did this according to what
• serve at

ULT

18 They also assigned the priests to their divisions, and the Levites to their divisions, for the service of God who is in Jerusalem, as it was written in the book of Moses.

UST

18 Then the Jewish leaders divided the priests and Levites into groups that would take turns to serve at the temple. They did this according to what Moses had written many years previously in the laws that he wrote.
Ezra 6:19

on the fourteenth day of the first month (ULT)
14th day of the first month (UST)

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Passover
• the exile
• the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• celebrated the Passover Festival
• Jews who had returned
• from Babylon

ULT
19 So the sons of the exile observed the Passover on the fourteenth day of the first month.

UST
19 On the 14th day of the first month, the Jews who had returned from Babylon celebrated the Passover Festival.
Ezra 6:20

had purified themselves (ULT)
To qualify themselves for offering the sacrifices (UST)

“made themselves pure.” Being pure represents being acceptable to God. Alternate translation: “made themselves acceptable to God” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• and for their brothers
• were pure
• had purified themselves
• the Passover lamb
• the priests
• the priests
• and the Levites
• the exile
• the sons of
• They slaughtered

Translation Words - UST

• for the other
• purified themselves by performing certain rituals
• To qualify themselves for offering the sacrifices
• the lambs for the benefit of
• the priests
• priests, and for themselves
• and Levites had already
• had returned
• from Babylon
• Then they slaughtered

ULT
20 Now the priests and the Levites had purified themselves together, and all of them were pure. They slaughtered the Passover lamb for all the sons of the exile and for their brothers the priests, and for themselves.

UST
20 To qualify themselves for offering the sacrifices, the priests and Levites had already purified themselves by performing certain rituals. Then they slaughtered the lambs for the benefit of all the people who had returned from Babylon, for the other priests, and for themselves.
Ezra 6:21

who had separated themselves from the uncleanness of the nations of the land (ULT)
separated...from the unclean people around them who had a different culture, language, and worship (UST)

Separating themselves from uncleanness represents refusing to do things that make people unclean. Alternate translation: “They refused to do the things that the people of the land did that made them unclean” (See: Metaphor)

from the uncleanness of the nations of the land (ULT)
from the unclean people around them who had a different culture, language, and worship (UST)

Here “uncleanness” represents being unacceptable to God. Alternate translation: “the things that the people of the land did that made them unacceptable to God” (See: Metaphor)

to seek Yahweh (ULT)
and they were able now...worship Yahweh (UST)

Seeking Yahweh represents choosing to know, worship, and obey him. Alternate translation: “chose to obey Yahweh” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - UST

• from Babylon
• the God
• Yahweh
• Those who
• of the Israelite people
• had returned
• around them who had a different culture, language, and worship
• and they were able now...worship
Ezra 6:22

and turned the heart of the king of Assyria (ULT) had changed the attitude of the king of Assyria (UST)

Turning the king’s heart represents making him think differently about the work of the temple. Alternate translation: “changed the attitude of Assyria's king” or “made Assyria's king willing” (See: Metonymy)

to strengthen their hands in the work of the house of God (ULT) toward them, and as a result, the king had helped them...rebuild the temple of God (UST)

Strengthening their hands in the work represents helping them to work. The Assyrian king did this by telling them to do the work and providing the money for it. Alternate translation: “to help them do the work of his house” or “to make it possible for them to do the work of his house” (See: Metaphor)

in the work of the house of God (ULT) rebuild the temple of God (UST)

This refers to building the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

• Unleavened Bread
• God
• the God of
• the heart of
• Yahweh
• Israel
• Assyria
• their hands
• the Festival of
• with joy
• had made them joyful
• the king of
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• of Unleavened Bread
• God
• the God
• the attitude of the
• Yahweh
• of Israel
• of Assyria
• toward them, and as a result, the king had helped them
• Festival
• The Israelite people throughout the land were joyful because
• The Israelite people throughout the land were joyful because
• king
• temple of
Ezra 7

Ezra 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Ezra begins his religious reforms.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's Law

The people no longer know the law of Moses. Therefore, the king allows Ezra to return to Judea to teach the people about God's law. Many people go with him. (See: law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law)
Ezra 7:1

General Information:
Ezra’s genealogy goes back to Aaron, the first high priest.

Seraiah (ULT)
Seraiah (UST)

See how you translated this man’s name in Ezra 2:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

Azariah...Hilkiah (ULT)
and the grandson of Azariah...and the great-grandson of Hilkiah (UST)

men’s names (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- son of (2)
- son of (3)
- Artaxerxes
- Persia
- Ezra
- during the reign of
- king of

Translation Words - UST

- He was the son of
- from Babylon to Jerusalem (2)
- and the great-grandson of Hilkiah (3)
- Artaxerxes
- of Persia
- Ezra went
- while...was the
- king

ULT
1 Now after these things, during the reign of Artaxerxes king of Persia, Ezra son of Seraiah, son of Azariah, son of Hilkiah,

UST
1 Many years later, while Artaxerxes was the king of Persia, Ezra went from Babylon to Jerusalem. He was the son of Seraiah and the grandson of Azariah, and the great-grandson of Hilkiah.
Ezra 7:2

Shallum (ULT)
Shallum, who was the (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 2:42. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zadok...Ahitub (ULT)
Zadok, who was the...Ahitub (UST)

men's names (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- son of (2)
- son of (3)

Translation Words - UST

- Hilkiah was the son of
- son of (2)
- son of (3)

ULT

2 son of Shallum, son of Zadok, son of Ahitub,

UST

2 Hilkiah was the son of Shallum, who was the son of Zadok, who was the son of Ahitub,
Ezra 7:3

Amariah…Azariah…Meraioth (ULT)
who was the…who was the…Meraioth (UST)

This list is all men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• son of (2)

Translation Words - UST

• who was the son of Amariah
• son of Azariah
• son of (2)

ULT

3 son of Amariah, son of Azariah, son of Meraioth,

UST

3 who was the son of Amariah, who was the son of Azariah, who was the son of Meraioth,
Ezra 7:4

Zerahiah...Uzzi...Bukki (ULT)
Zerahiah...Uzzi...Bukki (UST)

men’s names (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• son of (2)

Translation Words - UST

• who was the son of
• who was the son of
• who was the son of (2)
Ezra 7:5

Abishua...Phinehas...Eleazar (ULT)
Abishua...Phinehas...Eleazar (UST)

men's names (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of (2)
• son of (3)
• son of (4)
• the...priest
• chief

Translation Words - UST

• who was the son of
• who was the son of (2)
• who was the son of (3)
• who was the son of (4)
• high priest
• the first

ULT
5 son of Abishua, son of Phinehas, son of Eleazar, son of Aaron the chief priest

UST
5 who was the son of Abishua, who was the son of Phinehas, who was the son of Eleazar, who was the son of Aaron, the first high priest.
Ezra 7:6

The king granted to him...all his request (ULT)
Those were the laws that...after the king had told people...give...him anything...requested...all these matters (UST)

“The king gave Ezra anything he asked for”

according to the hand of Yahweh his God upon him (ULT)
to...Indeed, Yahweh helped Ezra very much in (UST)

The “hand” of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s blessing or help. Alternate translation: “the blessing of Yahweh was with Ezra” or “Yahweh was blessing Ezra” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• a...scribe
• the God of
• his God
• in the law of Moses
• Yahweh
• Yahweh
• Israel
• from Babylon
• Ezra
• according to the hand of
• The king

Translation Words - UST
• was a man who knew
• the God
• Indeed, Yahweh...Ezra very much in
• the laws...Moses wrote
• Yahweh
• Indeed, Yahweh...Ezra very much in
• of Israel
• Babylon
• Ezra
• helped
• after the king had told people
Ezra 7:7

the seventh year of King Artaxerxes (ULT)
That was during the seventh year that Artaxerxes was the king of Persia (UST)

This refers to the seventh year of his reign. Alternate translation: “in the seventh year that Artaxerxes was king” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Some from the sons of Israel
- the priests
- Artaxerxes
- and the Levites
- to Jerusalem
- and the gatekeepers
- King

Translation Words - UST

- descendants of
- and some other Israelite people went up with Ezra
- Some of the priests
- that Artaxerxes was the
- Levi
- Jerusalem
- some gatekeepers
- king of Persia
Ezra 7:8

in the fifth month (ULT)
in the fifth month (UST)

This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• to Jerusalem
• seventh
• the king

Translation Words - UST

• in Jerusalem
• of the seventh
• that Artaxerxes was king

ULT
8 He came to Jerusalem in the fifth month, which was in the seventh year of the king.

UST
8 Ezra and the group with him arrived in Jerusalem in the fifth month of the seventh year that Artaxerxes was king.
Ezra 7:9

on the first day of the first month (ULT)
on the first day of the...first month (UST)

This is near the middle of March on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

the...month, and on the first day of...fifth (ULT)
month, which was the first day of the Jewish year...on
the first day of the fifth (UST)

This is near the middle of July on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

according to the good hand of his God (ULT)
God acted very kindly toward them, they arrived safely
(UST)

“Hand” represents the power or control that God uses for good results. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• his God
• good
• from Babylon
• Jerusalem
• according to the...hand of

Translation Words - UST

• God acted very kindly toward them, they arrived safely
• God acted very kindly toward them, they arrived safely
• They had left Babylon
• Jerusalem
• God acted very kindly toward them, they arrived safely
Ezra 7:10

Ezra had established his heart to seek (ULT)  
Ezra’s entire life, he devoted himself to studying (UST)

Establishing his heart represents firmly deciding or committing himself to do something. Alternate translation: “Ezra committed his life to study” (See: Metaphor)

and to observe it (ULT)  
and how to obey those laws (UST)

“obey”

its statutes and ordinances (ULT)  
and all the decrees...for many years (UST)

These were the laws that God passed down to Israel through Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

• his heart  
• the law of...Yahweh  
• Yahweh  
• in Israel  
• Ezra  
• and ordinances  
• to seek  
• its statutes

Translation Words - UST

• he devoted himself  
• laws of Yahweh  
• of Yahweh  
• to the Israelite people  
• Ezra’s  
• for many years  
• to studying  
• and all the decrees
Ezra 7:11

This is a copy of the letter (ULT) was the decree that (UST)

The text following this statement was the decree given by King Artaxerxes.

Translation Words - ULT

• the scribe
• a scribe of
• the commandments of
• Yahweh
• Israel
• the priest
• Artaxerxes
• Ezra
• and of his statutes
• King

Translation Words - UST

• Ezra the priest and scribe
• commandments
• of
• King
Ezra 7:12

Artaxerxes, king of kings (ULT)
This letter is from me, Artaxerxes, the greatest of the kings (UST)

“The King of kings” was a title, meaning that he was the greatest of kings, the king that other kings obeyed. Alternate translation: “The Great King Artaxerxes” or “Artaxerxes, the greatest king” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• a scribe of
• the God of
• the law of the God of
• the priest
• Artaxerxes
• to Ezra
• king of
• kings
• Peace

Translation Words - UST

• who is in heaven
• who has studied very well all the
• the God
• rules and regulations that the God
• the priest
• This letter is from...Artaxerxes
• I am giving it to Ezra
• me
• the greatest of the kings
• gave to the Israelite people

ULT 12 “Artaxerxes, king of kings, to Ezra the priest, a scribe of the law of the God of heaven: Peace. And now

UST 12 This letter is from me, Artaxerxes, the greatest of the kings. I am giving it to Ezra the priest, who has studied very well all the rules and regulations that the God who is in heaven gave to the Israelite people.
Ezra 7:13

I am issuing a decree that all those...who desire...to go up to Jerusalem (ULT)
Ezra, I command that when you return to...any of...who want to be allowed...Jerusalem...to go (UST)

In those days people needed permission from the king to resettle and rebuild in an area previously destroyed by the conquering nation.

may go with you (ULT)
with you...who want to go (UST)

The word “you” refers to Ezra.

Translation Words - ULT

• am issuing
• Israel
• and the priests
• and the Levites
• to Jerusalem
• the people of
• in my kingdom
• those...who desire
• a decree

Translation Words - UST

• Ezra, I command
• the Israelite
• That includes any priests
• and descendants of Levi who will work in the temple
• Jerusalem
• people
• my kingdom
• who want to be allowed
• Ezra, I command
Ezra 7:14

Connecting Statement:
This continues the decree that King Artaxerxes gave to Ezra.

the king, and his seven counselors (ULT)
seven counselors...you (UST)

The word “I” and the phrase “the king” refer to the same person. The king is reminding the people who hear this letter that he is the author of this letter.

to inquire concerning Judah and Jerusalem...the law of your God (ULT)
to Jerusalem...can determine what is happening there and in other towns in Judah. You are taking with you a copy of God’s laws...the people (UST)

What they were to inquire about can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: “to investigate the situation in Judah and Jerusalem, in order to learn whether or not they are obeying God’s law” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• your God
• the law of your God
• Judah
• and Jerusalem
• in your hand
• the king
• his...counselors

Translation Words - UST

• God’s
• You are taking with you a copy of God’s laws
• the people
• Jerusalem
• make sure that...are doing everything...is written in those laws
• you
• counselors

ULT
14 For since from before the king, and his seven counselors, you are being sent to inquire concerning Judah and Jerusalem according to the law of your God, which is in your hand.

UST
14 I, along with my seven counselors, am sending you to Jerusalem, in order that you can determine what is happening there and in other towns in Judah. You are taking with you a copy of God’s laws; make sure that the people are doing everything that is written in those laws.
Ezra 7:15

You are to bring the silver and gold (ULT) to take with you the silver and gold (UST)

Where they were to bring it can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “You are to bring to Jerusalem the silver and gold” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

have freely offered (ULT) are wanting to give to (UST)

“Freely” means that they were not forced to offer the money. They gave it because they wanted to. Alternate translation: “the silver and gold that they have willingly offered”

Translation Words - ULT
  • to the God of Israel
  • in Jerusalem
  • the silver
  • the king
  • and his counselors
  • have freely offered
  • and gold

Translation Words - UST
  • the God of Israel
  • in Jerusalem
  • the silver
  • you
  • We are also telling you
  • are wanting to give to
  • and gold

ULT
15 You are to bring the silver and gold that the king and his counselors have freely offered to the God of Israel, whose dwelling is in Jerusalem.

UST
15 We are also telling you to take with you the silver and gold that I and my advisors are wanting to give to you, in order that you will present it as an offering to the God of Israel who lives in Jerusalem.
Ezra 7:16

the freewill offering of the people and the priests (ULT)
give to you...the priests and other Israelite people
(UST)

This can be expressed active form. Alternate translation: “what the
people and the priests have freely offered” (See: Assumed
Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• for the house of
• and the priests
• Babylon
• in Jerusalem
• the silver
• the people
• the province of
• the freewill offering of
• is to be freely offered
• and gold

Translation Words - UST

• God
• to be offerings for building the temple of their
• the priests
• Babylonia
• in Jerusalem
• silver
• and other Israelite people
• province
• give to you
• and the money that
• and gold

ULT
16 All the silver and gold that you may find in all the province of Babylon, along with the freewill offering of the people and the priests, is to be freely offered for the house of God which is in Jerusalem.

UST
16 You should also take any silver and gold that the people in the entire Babylonia province give to you, and the money that the priests and other Israelite people have happily said that they would give to you to be offerings for building the temple of their God in Jerusalem.
Ezra 7:17

Connecting Statement:
This continues the decree that King Artaxerxes gave to Ezra.

with this money, diligently buy bulls, rams, lambs, and grain offerings and drink offerings (ULT)
money, you should buy the bulls, rams, lambs, and the grain and wine (UST)

The phrase “in full” means as many as are necessary to complete the task. They were to use the gold and silver to buy all they needed in order to worship God in the temple. Alternate translation: “Buy as many of the oxen, rams, lambs, grain and drink offerings as are needed” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
• the altar
• lambs
• your God
• in Jerusalem
• bulls
• and drink offerings
• and offer
• rams
• and grain offerings
• in the house of

Translation Words - UST
• the altar outside
• lambs
• God
• in Jerusalem
• the bulls
• and the grain and wine
• will burn
• rams
• and the grain and wine
• temple of your

ULT
17 So therefore, with this money, diligently buy bulls, rams, lambs, and grain offerings and drink offerings, and offer them on the altar that is in the house of your God which is in Jerusalem.

UST
17 With this money, you should buy the bulls, rams, lambs, and the grain and wine that the priests will burn on the altar outside the temple of your God in Jerusalem.
Ezra 7:18

to you...your brothers...and (ULT)
you and your companions...to...to (UST)

The phrase “your brothers” refers to the people who were doing this work with Ezra. Alternate translation: “your co-workers” or “your companions” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- your God
- according to the will of your God
- your brothers
- the silver
- and...gold

Translation Words - UST

- God
- buy whatever you desire...God
- you and your companions
- silver
- or gold

ULT
18 Now that which seems good to you and your brothers to do with the rest of the silver and gold, do it according to the will of your God.

UST
18 If there is any silver or gold that remains after you have bought all those things, you and your companions are permitted to use it to buy whatever you desire, but buy only things that you know that God wants you to buy.
Ezra 7:19

Connecting Statement:
This continues the decree that King Artaxerxes gave to Ezra.

The objects that were given to you (ULT)
We have given to you some valuable items…the (UST)

This can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: “the objects that we have freely given to you” (See: Active or Passive)

deliver in full before the God of Jerusalem

The word “him” refers to God.

for the service of the house of your God (ULT)
to be used in…temple of (UST)

The abstract noun “service” can be expressed with the verbs “serve” or “use.” Alternate translation: “to use in the house of your God” or “to serve in the house of your God” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- your God
- the God of
- Jerusalem
- for the service of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- temple of
- your God
- Jerusalem
- to be used in
- temple of
Ezra 7:20

treasury...of (ULT)
the money (UST)

a secure place where money is stored

Translation Words - ULT

• your God
• the king
• for the house of
• the...house

Translation Words - UST

• temple
• the royal
• temple
• treasury here

ULT

20 Anything else that is needed for the house of your God that you may have occasion to give, pay for it from the treasury house of the king.

UST

20 If you need any other things for the temple, you are permitted to get the money for those things from the royal treasury here.
Ezra 7:21

Connecting Statement:
This continues the decree that King Artaxerxes gave to Ezra.

who are in the Province Beyond the River (ULT) west of the Euphrates River...that (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. See how you translated it in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

that anything that Ezra...asks from you...let it be done diligently (ULT)
the province...Give to Ezra...the...everything...he requests...and give it to him quickly (UST)

This can be expressed in active form. “Give Ezra in full anything he asks of you” (See: Active or Passive)

let it be done diligently (ULT)
and give it to him quickly (UST)

The phrase “in full” here represents whatever quantity necessary to do the work. Alternate translation: “should be given as much as he needs” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• the scribe of
• issue
• the God of
• the Law of the God of
• the priest
• Artaxerxes
• Ezra
• King
• a decree

Translation Words - UST

• who is in heaven
• who has studied very well...of
• command this
• God
• laws...the God
• the priest
• Artaxerxes
• Give to Ezra
• King
• command this
Ezra 7:22

one hundred silver talents (ULT)
metric tons of silver (UST)

“100 talents of silver.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

one hundred cors of wheat (ULT)
five...bushels of wheat (UST)

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “22,000 liters of grain” or “twenty thousand liters of grain” (See: Biblical Volume and Numbers)

one hundred baths of oil (ULT)
hundred...the same...of olive oil (UST)

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: 2,200 liters of oil” or “two thousand liters of oil” (See: Biblical Volume and Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• silver
• oil
• wheat
• wine

Translation Words - UST

• of silver
• of olive oil
• wheat
• of wine
Ezra 7:23

for the house of (ULT)
temple (UST)

This refers to God’s temple.

For why should his wrath be against the kingdom of the king and his sons (ULT) because we certainly do not want him to be angry with me or with my descendants who will later be kings (UST)

The king uses this question to say that he does not want God’s wrath to come upon them. The implied information is that if they do not do give Ezra what he needs, then God will punish the kingdom. Alternate translation: “For we do not want God’s wrath to come upon the kingdom of me and my sons.” or “For if you do not do these things, God’s wrath will come upon the kingdom of me and my sons.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

For why should his wrath be against the kingdom of the king and his sons (ULT) because we certainly do not want him to be angry with me or with my descendants who will later be kings (UST)

God’s wrath represents God punishing them. Alternate translation: “For why should God punish the kingdom of me and my sons” or “For if you do not do these things, God will punish the kingdom of me and my sons” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- the decree of
- and his sons
- the God of
- the God of (2)
- for the house of
- the kingdom of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- their God
- his
- requires for
- or with my descendants who will later
- their God
- his (2)
- temple
- be kings
- me
Ezra 7:24

Connecting Statement:
This continues the decree that King Artaxerxes gave to Ezra.

We also make known to you that...it is not lawful to impose...on (ULT)
We are also commanding that...will be required to (UST)

“We are telling them not to impose any tribute or taxes”

musicians (ULT)
musicians (UST)
people who play musical instruments

Translation Words - ULT

• of...God
• the priests
• Levites
• tax
• or custom
• gatekeepers
• it is...lawful
• tribute
• or other servants of
• the house
• We...make known

Translation Words - UST

• the temple
• none of the priests
• descendants of Levi who work in
• taxes
• pay
• guards
• will be required
• pay
• or other men who work
• temple
• We are also commanding
Ezra 7:25

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the decree that King Artaxerxes gave to Ezra.

according to the wisdom of God that is in your hand, appoint judges and magistrates (ULT)
your God has enabled...to become very wise. Using... wisdom, appoint men in the province...who will judge cases (UST)

The abstract noun "wisdom" can be expressed with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “God has made you wise, so you must wisely appoint judges and magistrates” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- your God
- the laws of your God
- according to the wisdom of
- and magistrates
- judge
- Ezra
- is in your hand
- teach those
- the people
- judges
- who know
- know them

Translation Words - UST

- your God
- God's laws to others
- You must appoint men who know the laws of your God...God's laws to others
- to become very wise
- who will judge cases
- and men who will judge cases
- Ezra
- has enabled
- know them
- involving the people
- who will judge cases
- you must
- teach
Ezra 7:26

whether death, or banishment, or confiscation of goods, or imprisonment (ULT)

or...Some of them will be executed...some will be put in prison, some will be sent out of the country or...their property taken away from them (UST)

The abstract nouns can be translated with verbs. Alternate translation: "whether by killing them, banishing them, confiscating their goods, or imprisoning them" or "You may kill them, send them away, take the things the own, or put them in prison" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- your God
- the law of your God
- judgment
- and the law
- death
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- God's
- God's...the laws
- punished
- laws
- Some of them will be executed
- of my government

ULT

26 And on all who will not observe the law of your God and the law of the king, let judgment be quickly executed on him, whether death, or banishment, or confiscation of goods, or imprisonment.

UST

26 Everyone who does not obey God's laws or the laws of my government must be punished severely. Some of them will be executed, some will be put in prison, some will be sent out of the country or have all their property taken away from them.“
Ezra 7:27

Connecting Statement:
Ezra praises God because of what King Artaxerxes decreed.

placed such a thing into the heart of the king to beautify the house of Yahweh which is in Jerusalem (ULT)
He has caused the king to want to honor his temple in Jerusalem (UST)

Placing things in the king's heart represents causing him to have certain thoughts and desires. Alternate translation: “caused the king to want to glorify Yahweh's house in Jerusalem” (See: Metaphor)

the house of...Yahweh (ULT)
his temple (UST)

This refers to Yahweh's temple” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Blessed be
• God of
• into the heart of
• Yahweh
• Yahweh (2)
• in Jerusalem
• our fathers
• the king
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• Ezra said, “Praise
• the God
• to want to
• Yahweh
• his (2)
• in Jerusalem
• our ancestors worshiped
• king
• temple
Ezra 7:28

and who has extended covenant faithfulness to me

(ULT)

Because God acted kindly (UST)

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful” or “loyal.” Alternate translation: “who has been faithful to me” or “who has been loyal to me” (See: Abstract Nouns)

So I was strengthened (ULT)

me. Because God has helped me, I have been encouraged (UST)

Being strengthened represents being encouraged. Alternate translation: I am encouraged” (See: Metaphor)

as the hand of Yahweh my God was upon me (ULT)

his...acted kindly toward...and I have been able to...some of...to go (UST)

Here Yahweh's hand represents what he did to help Ezra. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh has helped me” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- my God
- covenant faithfulness
- Yahweh
- Israel
- mighty
- as the hand of
- the heads of
- was strengthened
- the king
- the king
- and his counselors
- the...princes of

Translation Words - UST

- to go
- kindly
- his
- the Israelite
- powerful
- acted kindly toward
- leaders
- Because God has helped me, I have been encouraged
- the king
- and all his
- advisors
• officials have also
Ezra 8

Ezra 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The people’s return to Judah

Many people went back to Judah with Ezra. They trusted God to protect them and the precious items they carried with them, which had been given for the temple. (See: trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness)
Ezra 8:1

General Information:
There is an apparent shift in authorship beginning here. Chapters 1-7 were written as if the author were writing about Ezra. Chapter 8 was written as if the author were Ezra. Verses 2-14 are a list of leaders and their ancestors. All of them are men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• from Babylon
• Artaxerxes
• their fathers' houses
• the heads of
• during the reign of
• King

Translation Words - UST

• who came...from Babylonia
• when Artaxerxes was
• of the clans
• leaders
• when Artaxerxes was
• king of Persia

ULT

1 These are the heads of their fathers' houses, and the genealogy of those who went up with me from Babylon during the reign of King Artaxerxes:

UST

1 This is a list of the names of the leaders of the clans who came with me up to Jerusalem from Babylonia when Artaxerxes was king of Persia:
Ezra 8:2

from the sons of Phinehas, Gershom (ULT)
Gershom, in the clan descended from Aaron's grandson Phinehas (UST)

This is the first item in the list. It can be written with the verb “was.” Alternate translation: “The leader of the descendants of Phinehas was Gershom” or “Gershom was the leader of the descendants of Phinehas”

from the sons of Ithamar, Daniel (ULT)
Daniel, in the clan descended from Aaron's son Ithamar (UST)

This is the second item in the list. It can be written with the verb "was." Alternate translation: “The leader of the descendants of Ithamar was Daniel” or “Daniel was the leader of the descendants of Ithamar”

from the sons of...David, Hattush (ULT)
from...Hattush...King David (UST)

This is the third item in the list. It can be written with the verb “were.” Alternate translation: “The leaders of the descendants of David were Hattush who was...Parosh; and Zechariah” or “The leaders of the descendants of David were Hattush and Zechariah. Hattush was from...Parosh”

Hattush (ULT)
Hattush (UST)

This is a man's name.

Translation Words - ULT

- from the sons of
- from the sons of
- from the sons of (2)

Translation Words - UST

- from Aaron's grandson
- from
- a descendant of Shecaniah in the clan descended from (2)
Ezra 8:3

Parosh (ULT)
Parosh (UST)

See how you translated this man’s name in Ezra 2:3.

and with him were registered 150 males (ULT)
and 150 other men in the clan descended (UST)

“with Zechariah there were 150 males listed in the record of his genealogy”

150 males

“one hundred and fifty males” (See: Numbers)

**Translation Words - ULT**

• from the sons of
  • from the sons of

**Translation Words - UST**

• from
  • from

ULT
3 from the sons of Shecaniah, from the sons of Parosh, Zechariah, and with him were registered 150 males;

UST
3 Zechariah and 150 other men in the clan descended from Parosh.
Ezra 8:4

**General Information:**
The list of men's names continues. (See: How to Translate Names)

**ULT**

4 from the sons of Pahath-Moab, Eliehoenai son of Zerahiah (ULT)
Eliehoenai son of Zerahiah...from Pahath-Moab (UST)

This is the next item in the list. It can be written with the verb “was.” Alternate translation: “The leader of the descendants of Pahath-Moab was Eliehoenai son of Zerahiah” or “Eliehoenai son of Zerahiah was the leader of the descendants of Pahath-Moab”

and with him two hundred males (ULT)
and two hundred other men in the clan descended (UST)

“with Eliehoenai were two hundred males”

Zerahiah (ULT)
Zerahiah (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 7:4.

two hundred (ULT)
and two hundred (UST)

“200” (See: Numbers)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- from the sons of
- son of

**Translation Words - UST**

- from
- son of
Ezra 8:5

three hundred (ULT)
and three hundred (UST)

“300” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• from the sons of
• Ben

Translation Words - UST

• from
• Ben

ULT
5 from the sons of Zattu, Ben Jahaziel, and with him three hundred males;

UST
5 Ben Jahaziel and three hundred other men in the clan descended from Shecaniah.
Ezra 8:6

Adin (ULT)
Adin (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 2:15.

fifty (ULT)
and fifty (UST)

“50” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
• from the sons of
• son of

Translation Words - UST
• from
• son of

ULT
6 from the sons of Adin, Ebed son of Jonathan, and with him fifty males;

UST
6 Ebed son of Jonathan and fifty other men in the clan descended from Adin.
Ezra 8:7

seventy (ULT)
and seventy (UST)

“70” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• from the sons of
• son of

Translation Words - UST

• from
• son of

ULT
7 from the sons of Elam, Jeshaiah son of Athaliah, and with him seventy males;

UST
7 Jeshaiah son of Athaliah and seventy other men in the clan descended from Elam.
Ezra 8:8

General Information:
The list of men's names continues. (See: How to Translate Names)

from the sons of Shephatiah, Zebadiah son of Michael (ULT)
Zebadiah son of Michael...from Shephatiah (UST)

This is the next item in the list. It can be written with the verb “was.” Alternate translation: “The leader of the descendants of Shephatiah was Zebadiah son of Michael” or “Zebadiah son of Michael was the leader of the descendants of Shephatiah”

Shephatiah (ULT)
Shephatiah (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 2:2.

Michael (ULT)
Michael (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

and with him eighty males (ULT)
and eighty other men in the clan descended (UST)

“with Zebadiah were listed eighty males”

eighty (ULT)
and eighty (UST)

“80” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- from the sons of
- son of

Translation Words - UST

- from
- son of
Ezra 8:9

218 males (ULT)
and 218 other men (UST)

“two hundred and eighteen males” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
  • from the sons of
  • son of

Translation Words - UST
  • from
  • son of
Ezra 8:10

160 males (ULT)
and one hundred sixty other men (UST)

“one hundred and sixty males” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
• from the sons of Bani
• son of

Translation Words - UST
• from
• Ben

ULT
10 from the sons of Bani, Shelomith son of Josiphiah, and with him 160 males;

UST
10 Ben Josiphiah and one hundred sixty other men in the clan descended from Shelomith.
Ezra 8:11

Bebai (ULT)
Bebai (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 2:11.

twenty-eight (ULT)
and twenty eight (UST)

“28” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• from the sons of
  • son of

Translation Words - UST

• from another man whose name was
  • son of

ULT

11 from the sons of Bebai, Zechariah son of Bebai, and with him twenty-eight males.

UST

11 Zechariah son of Bebai and twenty eight other men in the clan descended from another man whose name was Bebai.
Ezra 8:12

General Information:
This is the end of the list of men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

from the sons of Azgad, Johanan son of Hakkatan (ULT)
Johanan son of Hakkatan...from Azgad (UST)

This is the next item in the list. It can be written with the verb “was.” Alternate translation: “The leader of the descendants of Azgad was Johanan son of Hakkatan” or “Johanan son of Hakkatan was the leader of the descendants of Azgad”

and with him 110 males (ULT)
and one hundred ten other men in the clan descended (UST)

“with Johanan were listed 110 males”

110 males (ULT)
and one hundred ten other men (UST)

“one hundred and ten males” (See: Numbers)

Azgad (ULT)
Azgad (UST)

See how you translated this man’s name in Ezra 2:12.

Translation Words - ULT

• from the sons of
• son of

Translation Words - UST

• from
• son of
Ezra 8:13

from the sons of Adonikam (ULT)
from Adonikam (UST)

The word “those” refers to the leaders. Alternate translation: “The leaders of the descendants of Adonikam”

Adonikam (ULT)
Adonikam (UST)

See how you translated this man’s name in Ezra 2:13.

sixty (ULT)
sixty (UST)

“60” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• from the sons of
• the names...were

Translation Words - UST

• from
• who returned
Ezra 8:14

Bigvai (ULT)
Bigvai (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 2:2.

seventy (ULT)
and seventy (UST)

“70” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- from the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- from

ULT
14 from the sons of Bigvai, Uthai and Zaccur, and with him seventy males.

UST
14 Uthai and Zaccur and seventy other men in the clan descended from Bigvai.
Ezra 8:15

General Information:
The word “I” in chapter 8 refers to Ezra. He is the author. Verse 16 contains a list of men’s names. (See: How to Translate Names)

the river that flows to Ahava (ULT)
at the canal that goes...Ahava (UST)

Possible meanings are that the “canal” was 1) a waterway that men built or 2) an ordinary river. It can be translated in a more general way. Alternate translation: “the waterway that flows to Ahava”

Ahava (ULT)
Ahava (UST)

This is the name of a place (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• but...of the sons of
• and the priests
• Levi
• the people

Translation Words - UST
• from Babylon
• that there were priests
• Levi
• going with us

ULT 15 I gathered them at the river that flows to Ahava, and we camped there three days. Then I examined the people and the priests, but none of the sons of Levi were found there.

UST 15 Ezra said, “I gathered together all of Jews at the canal that goes from Babylon to Ahava. We set up our tents there and stayed there for three days. During that time I read the lists of names and found out that there were priests going with us, but no other descendants of Levi who could help them in the temple.”
Ezra 8:16

Shemaiah (ULT)
Shemaiah (UST)

See how you translated this man’s name in Ezra 8:13.

and Elnathan, and Jarib, and Elnathan (ULT)
Elnathan, Jarib, another man named Elnathan (UST)

There were apparently three men with the same name.

Translation Words - ULT

• head men
• men of understanding

Translation Words - UST

• who were all leaders of the people
• three in all), who were teachers
Ezra 8:17

Iddo (ULT)
he and his (UST)

This is a man’s name. (See: How to Translate Names)

Next I sent them

The word “them” refers to the nine leaders and two teachers written about in Ezra 8:16. Alternate translation: “Next I sent those men to Iddo” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in...Kasiphia (ULT)
in the temple in Jerusalem (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

and I put in their mouths the words to speak to Iddo...
to send to us servants for the house of our God (ULT)
of the descendants of Levi...to request that he and his...
who had...send us some men who would go with us to
work in God’s new temple (UST)

The words “that is” introduces what he told them to say. Alternate translation: “I told them to tell Iddo...to send us servants for the house of God”

Translation Words - ULT

• command, commandment
• and his brothers
• our God
• for the house of our God
• the head of
• servants

Translation Words - UST

• command, commandment
• relatives and other men
• God’s
• God’s new temple
• leader
• with us to work in

ULT

17 Next I sent them to Iddo, the head of the place called Kasiphia, and I put in their mouths the words to speak to Iddo and his brothers, the temple servants in the place called Kasiphia, to send to us servants for the house of our God.

UST

17 I sent them all to Iddo, the leader of the descendants of Levi, who was living in Kasiphia, to request that he and his relatives and other men who had worked in the temple in Jerusalem send us some men who would go with us to work in God’s new temple.
So they sent to us by the good hand of our God a man of understanding named Sherebiah, from the sons of Mahli, the son of Levi, the son of Israel, with his eighteen sons and brothers.

Because God acted kindly toward us, they brought to us a man named Sherebiah and eighteen of his sons and other relatives. Sherebiah was a very wise man, a descendant of Mahli, who was a grandson of Levi.

This is a man of understanding and wisdom.

Here “Israel” is a man’s name. It is the name God gave to Jacob.

“18” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- and brothers
- from the sons of
- the son of
- the son (2)
- with his sons
- our God
- the good
- Levi of
- Israel
- hand of
- of understanding

Translation Words - UST

- and other relatives
- his sons
- a descendant of
- Sherebiah...who was a grandson of Levi (2)
- Sherebiah...who was a grandson of Levi
- Because God
- Because God
• Sherebiah...who was a grandson of Levi
• Sherebiah...who was a grandson of Levi
• acted kindly toward
• was a very wise man
Ezra 8:19

Hashabiah...Merari (ULT)
Hashabiah...Levi's son Merari (UST)

These are men's names. (See: How to Translate Names)

twenty men (ULT)
and twenty (UST)

“20” (See: Numbers)

Jeshaiah, of (ULT)
Jeshaiah (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 8:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• and his brothers
• the sons of
• and their sons

Translation Words - UST

• of their relatives
• descendants of
• of their relatives
Ezra 8:20

and his officials (ULT)
Those men’s ancestors had been (UST)

people with specific authority within a government system

Translation Words - ULT

• whom...had appointed
• by name
• David
• the Levites
• for the service of

Translation Words - UST

• They also sent
• I listed the names of...those men
• King David
• Levi
• to assist

ULT
20 and also the temple servants whom David and his officials had appointed for the service of the Levites—220 temple servants, all of them designated by name.

UST
20 They also sent 220 other men to work in the temple. Those men’s ancestors had been appointed by King David to assist the descendants of Levi. I listed the names of all those men.
Ezra 8:21

the river Ahava (ULT)
Ahava Canal (UST)

This is the name of the canal that flows to the place called Ahava. See how you translated Ahava and canal in Ezra 8:15. (See: How to Translate Names)

to seek a straight way from him for us and our little ones, and all our possessions (ULT)
all...in...We prayed that God would protect us while we traveled, and also protect our children and our possessions (UST)

The word “seek” represents asking God to do something for them. Here a “straight path” represents safety while they travel. Alternate translation: “to ask God to give us, our little ones, and all our possessions safety while we travel” or “to ask God to protect us, our little ones, and all our possessions while we travel” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - UST

- our God
- I told them that we should humble ourselves
- We prayed that
- fast and pray
- I announced a time for us
Ezra 8:22

The hand of our God is on all those who seek him for good (ULT)
our God...takes care of...all those who truly trust...him...to (UST)

The hand of God being on people is a metonym for God helping people. Seeking God is a metaphor for serving him. Alternate translation: “God helps all who serve him” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

but his strength and his wrath are against all those who forsake him (ULT)
that he becomes very angry with those who refuse to obey him...to (UST)

God's might and wrath being on people is a metonym for him punishing people. Forgetting God is a metaphor for refusing to serve him. Alternate translation: “but he punishes all who refuse to serve him” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- our God
- but his strength
- and his wrath
- for good
- The hand of
- those who forsake him
- I was ashamed
- and horsemen
- the king
- to the king
- those who seek him

Translation Words - UST

- our God
- that he becomes very angry with
- that he becomes very angry with
- those who truly trust...him
- takes care of
- refuse
- So I would have been ashamed
- and men riding on horses
- the king
- the king
- all

ULT
22 For I was ashamed to ask from the king soldiers and horsemen to protect us from the enemy along the way, because we had spoken to the king, saying, The hand of our God is on all those who seek him for good, but his strength and his wrath are against all those who forsake him.

UST
22 Previously we had told the king that our God takes care of all those who truly trust in him, but that he becomes very angry with those who refuse to obey him. So I would have been ashamed to ask the king to send soldiers and men riding on horses to protect us from our enemies while we were traveling along the road.
Ezra 8:23

So we fasted and sought our God about this matter (ULT)
So we fasted and requested God to protect us...to him (UST)

Here seeking God is a metaphor for asking God to do something for them. Alternate translation: “So we fasted and asked God to help us” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
  • our God
  • So we fasted

Translation Words - UST
  • God
  • So we fasted

ULT
23 So we fasted and sought our God about this matter, and he answered our prayer.

UST
23 So we fasted and requested God to protect us, and we prayed to him. And he answered our prayer.
Ezra 8:24

Sherebiah, Hashabiah (ULT)
Sherebiah and Hashabiah (UST)

See how you translated these men's names in Ezra 8:19. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• from their brothers
• Then I set apart
• the priests
• from the heads of

Translation Words - UST

• others
• I chose
• of the priests
• of the leaders

ULT
24 Then I set apart twelve from the heads of the priests: Sherebiah, Hashabiah, and with them ten from their brothers.

UST
24 I chose twelve of the leaders of the priests, Sherebiah and Hashabiah and ten others.
Ezra 8:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- our God
- Israel
- the silver
- for the offering
- that...had offered
- the king
- and his counselors
- the gold
- and his princes
- for the house of

Translation Words - UST

- of our God
- the Israelite
- silver
- of the gifts
- the king and his
- the king and his
- advisors and other officials, and
- and gold and
- advisors and other officials, and
- the temple

ULT
25 I weighed out to them the silver, and the gold, and the objects for the offering for the house of our God that the king, and his counselors, and his princes, and all Israel who were present had offered.

UST
25 I assigned them to supervise the transport to Jerusalem of the gifts of silver and gold and the other valuable items that the king and his advisors and other officials, and the Israelite people who were living in Babylonia, had contributed for the temple of our God.
Ezra 8:26

650 talents of silver (ULT)
About twenty-one and one-half metric tons of silver (UST)

“six hundred and fifty talents of silver.” A talent weighs about thirty-three kilograms. You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “22,000 kilograms of silver” (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

one hundred talents of silver objects (ULT)
one hundred items made from silver that altogether weighed three and one-third metric tons (UST)

“100 talents of silver objects.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “3,300 kilograms of silver objects” (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

one hundred talents of gold (ULT)
three and one-third metric tons of gold (UST)

“100 talents of gold.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “3,300 kilograms of gold” (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

Translation Words - ULT

• their hand
• silver

Translation Words - UST

• I weighed each of the items. This was the total
• of silver
• silver that altogether weighed three and one-third metric tons
• of gold
Ezra 8:27

worth one thousand darics (ULT)
that altogether weighed about eight and one-half kilograms (UST)

“1,000 darics.” A “daric” was a small gold coin that people in the Persian Empire used. You can translate this in terms of the number of coins or their weight. Alternate translation: “one thousand Persian gold coins” or “eight and one half kilograms of gold” (See: Numbers and Biblical Money)

and...vessels of bronze (ULT)
items made of...bronze (UST)

Bronze is a mixture of copper and another metal. It is stronger than pure copper.

Translation Words - ULT

- fine
- bronze
- gold
- as gold
- as precious

Translation Words - UST

- that were as valuable as
- bronze
- gold
- of gold
- ones made

ULT

27 and twenty gold bowls worth one thousand darics, and two fine polished vessels of bronze as precious as gold.

UST

27 twenty gold bowls that altogether weighed about eight and one-half kilograms, and two items made of polished bronze that were as valuable as ones made of gold.
Ezra 8:28

Then I said to them (ULT)
I said to those priests (UST)

“Then I said to the twelve priestly officials”

Translation Words - ULT

• holy
• are holy
• the God of
• to Yahweh
• to Yahweh
• your fathers
• and the silver
• are a freewill offering
• and the gold

Translation Words - UST

• are specially set apart
• are special to him
• the God whom
• Yahweh
• for Yahweh
• our ancestors worshiped
• in the same way
• The people themselves gave these things to be offerings to...voluntarily
• in the same way
Ezra 8:29

until you weigh them out before the heads of the priests and the Levites, and the heads of the fathers of Israel (ULT)

them carefully...weigh them in the presence of the priests, the descendants of Levi who will help the priests, and the other Israelite leaders there (UST)

When they arrived in Jerusalem, they would weigh the silver, gold, and bronze to show that they had not taken any of it for themselves.

Translation Words - ULT

• Yahweh
• the house of Yahweh
• Israel
• the priests
• and the Levites
• in Jerusalem
• the fathers of
• the heads of
• and the heads of
• Watch over them
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• in the new temple
• in the new temple
• Israelite
• the priests
• the descendants of Levi
• and when we arrive in Jerusalem
• and the other...leaders there
• the priests
• who will help the priests
• So guard
• in the new temple
Ezra 8:30

The priests and the Levites (ULT)
So the priests and descendants of Levi (UST)

According to the law of Moses, the tribe of Levi had the work of caring for the temple, its possessions, and the offerings.

Translation Words - ULT
- our God
- to the house of our God
- The priests
- and the Levites
- to Jerusalem
- the silver
- and the gold
- to the house of

Translation Words - UST
- temple
- temple
- So the priests
- and descendants of Levi
- in Jerusalem
- silver
- and gold and
- temple

ULT
30 The priests and the Levites received by weight the silver, and the gold, and the objects, to take them to Jerusalem, to the house of our God.

UST
30 So the priests and descendants of Levi took from me all the gifts of silver and gold and the other valuable items, in order to carry them to the temple in Jerusalem.
Ezra 8:31

We went out from the river Ahava (ULT)
we left the Ahava Canal (UST)

“We left the Ahava Canal” or “We started traveling from the Ahava Canal”

from the river Ahava (ULT)
the Ahava Canal (UST)

This is the name of the canal that flows to the place called Ahava. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:21. (See: How to Translate Names)

on the twelfth day of the first month (ULT)
On the twelfth day of the first month (UST)

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The twelfth day is near the end of March on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

The hand of our God was on us (ULT)
to...Our God took care of us (UST)

The hand of God being on people is a metonym for God helping people. Alternate translation: “God was helping us” (See: Metonymy)

and he delivered us from the hand of the enemy and from those lying in ambush along the road (ULT)
to...and while we traveled, he prevented our enemies and bandits from attacking us (UST)

The hand represents what those people might do. It specifically refers to the enemy attacking the group that was traveling. Alternate translation: “he protected us from the attack of the enemy and the ones who wished to ambush us along the road” or “He kept the enemy from attacking us and he kept robbers from ambushing us along the road” (See: Metonymy)

and from those lying in ambush (ULT)
from attacking us (UST)

This refers to thieves and robbers who wanted to attack them for their treasures.

Translation Words - ULT

- our God
- to Jerusalem
- The hand of
- from the hand of
- and he delivered us

Translation Words - UST

- Our God
- Jerusalem
• took care of us
• he prevented...and bandits
• he prevented...and bandits
Ezra 8:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• to Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem

ULT

32 So we came to Jerusalem and stayed there three days.

UST

32 After we arrived in Jerusalem, we rested for three days.
Ezra 8:33

the silver and the gold and the objects were weighed out (ULT)
There the silver and gold and the other items were weighed (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the twelve priestly officials weighed out the silver, gold and objects” (See: Active or Passive)

the silver and the gold and the objects were weighed out...into the hand of Meremoth (ULT)
There the silver and gold and the other items were weighed...we went to...Meremoth (UST)

Here “the hand of Meremoth” represents Meremoth's care of the silver, gold, and objects. The men weighed those things and gave them to Meremoth to take care of them. (See: Metonymy)

Meremoth...Uriah...Eleazar...Phinehas...Jozabad...Jeshua, and Noadiah...Binnui (ULT)
Meremoth...Uriah...Eleazar the...Phinehas...Jozabad...Jeshua and Noadiah...son of Binnui, were with him (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jeshua (ULT)
Jeshua (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 2:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- son of
- son of (2)
- son of (3)
- son of
- our God
- in the house of our God
- the priest
- the Levites
- the hand of
- the silver
- and the gold

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- son of (2)
- son of (3)
- son of Binnui, were with him
• the temple
• the temple
• the priest
• of Levi
• Meremoth
• There the silver
• and gold and the other items
Ezra 8:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
34 the number and weight of everything, and all the weight was written down at that time.

UST
34 They counted everything, and wrote down how much they weighed, and wrote a description of each item.
Ezra 8:35

Then those who had come back from the captivity, the sons of the exiles (ULT)
We who had returned from Babylonia (UST)

These two phrases refer to the Jewish people who were living as exiles in Babylon and who left Babylon and returned to Jerusalem in Judea. Alternate translation: “The ones who came back to Jerusalem from the captivity in Babylon, the people of exile”

twelve...ninety-six...seventy-seven...twelve (ULT)
We offered twelve...ninety-six...and seventy-seven...We also sacrificed twelve goats (UST)

“12...96...77...12” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- lambs
- the sons of
- to the God of
- to Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- bulls
- from the captivity
- the exiles
- and...male goats
- as a sin offering
- rams
- burnt offerings
- as a burnt offering

Translation Words - UST

- lambs
- from Babylonia
- to God...We also offered
- These were...on the altar
- Israelite people
- us
- bulls for
- We who
- had returned
- rams
- atone for the sins that all the people had committed
- us
- offered...sacrifices on the altar
- These were...on the altar
Ezra 8:36

and the governors in the Province Beyond the River (ULT)
and other officials of the province west of the Euphrates River (UST)

These were the Babylonian officials managing the people west of the Euphrates River, which included the people living in Judea.

and the governors in the Province Beyond the River (ULT)
and other officials of the province west of the Euphrates River (UST)

This is the name of the province that was west of the Euphrates River. It was across the river from the city of Susa. It included Judea. See how you translated it in Ezra 4:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• the house of God
• the people
• the king
• the king
• and the governors in the Province
• the decrees of

Translation Words - UST

• God
• and for the temple...God
• for us Israelite people
• that the king had given to us
• After they read
• and other officials of the province
• letter

ULT
36 Then they gave the decrees of the king to the satraps of the king and the governors in the Province Beyond the River, and they supported the people and the house of God.
8:10 [!] The name Bani was missing in the MT was restored from the LXX.

UST
36 Some of us who returned from Babylonia took to the governors and other officials of the province west of the Euphrates River the letter that the king had given to us. After they read the letter, they did all that they were able to do for us Israelite people and for the temple of God.”
Ezra 9

Ezra 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Intermarriage

When Ezra found out that many Jews had married Gentile wives, he prayed to God and asked God why he had been so good to them by letting these few people return from captivity even though they sinned by marrying Gentile wives. They did this before and God had punished them for it. God forbid this type of marriage because it caused the people to worship other gods. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry)
when these things were done, the officials came to me, saying, “the people of Israel, and the priests, and the Levites have not separated themselves from the peoples of the lands with their abominations: the Canaanite, the Hittite, the Perizzite, the Jebusite, the Ammonite, the Moabite, the Egyptian, and the Amorite.

have married people from other lands and have adopted their religion

Translation Words - ULT

• with their abominations
• Israel
• and the priests
• the Moabite
• the Hittite
• the Canaanite
• and the Amorite
• the Egyptian
• and the Levites
• the Ammonite
• the Jebusite
• the Perizzite
• The people of
• from the peoples of
• the officials

Translation Words - UST

• They are doing the same disgusting things
• Some time later, the Jewish
• priests and other men who are descendants
• and by the people from Moab
• Heth
• that are being done by the Canaan
• and Amor
• and Egypt
• of Levi who work in the temple, have
• Ammon
• Jebus
• Periz
• people groups
• the other people
• leaders
Ezra 9:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in...unfaithfulness
- and their sons
- the holy
- and the hand of
- with the peoples of
- and rulers
- seed
- the officials

Translation Words - UST

- to betray God
- their sons to do the same thing
- So we, God's sacred
- And some of our leaders
- people
- and officials
- have become polluted
- And some of our leaders

ULT
2 For they have taken from their daughters for themselves and their sons, so that the holy seed is mixed with the peoples of the lands, and the hand of the officials and rulers has been foremost in this unfaithfulness."

UST
2 Specifically, some Israelite men have married women who are not Israelites, and they have allowed their sons to do the same thing. So we, God's sacred people, have become polluted. And some of our leaders and officials have been the first ones to betray God in this way!'
Ezra 9:3

When I heard this matter (ULT)
When I heard that, I was overwhelmed, so...of...that (UST)

When Ezra heard that many Israelites had married foreign women and were worshiping their gods

I tore my clothing and my robe and pulled out hair from my head and beard (ULT)
I tore my clothes and tore some hair from my head and from my beard. Then I...the (UST)

Ezra was showing everyone how unhappy he was that people were doing things that offended God. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• and my robe
• from my head
• devastated

Translation Words - UST

• clothes
• head
• to us about marrying women who are not Israelites
Ezra 9:4

the evening sacrifice (ULT)
offer the evening sacrifices of grain (UST)

a sacrifice that the priests would offer around the time the sun was going down

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- Israel
- the transgression of
- the exiles
- gathered
- devastated
- those who trembled
- sacrifice

Translation Words - UST

- some of those who
- some of those who
- had sinned like that
- had returned from Babylonia
- many of them
- They came
- trembled when they heard
- offer

ULT

4 All those who trembled at the words of the God of Israel because of the transgression of the exiles gathered to me, and I sat devastated until the evening sacrifice.

UST

4 So many of them trembled when they heard that some of those who had returned from Babylonia had sinned like that. They came and sat with me until it was time to offer the evening sacrifices of grain.
Ezra 9:5

from my fasting (ULT)
I was still sitting there (UST)

another way of saying he was “sitting ashamed” (Ezra 9:4), “where I was sitting on the ground to show how ashamed I was”

and knelt down on my knees, and spread out my hands (ULT)
I quickly prostrated myself on the ground. I lifted up my hands (UST)

“got on my knees and stretched out my arms with my hands open toward the sky”

Translation Words - ULT

- my God
- Yahweh
- and my robe
- my hands
- But at...sacrifice
- from my fasting

Translation Words - UST

- my God
- Yahweh
- wearing those...clothes and mourning. I stood up, and
- I lifted up my hands
- to offer those sacrifices
- I was still sitting there
Ezra 9:6

Our iniquities have risen higher than our head, and our guilt has grown up to the heavens (ULT)
The sins that we Israelites have committed are very great; it is as though they have risen up higher than our heads. As for our guilt for committing those sins, it is as though it rises up to the heavens (UST)

These words are two ways of speaking of iniquity and guilt as if they were physical objects that could grow to be larger than people. The abstract nouns “iniquity” and “guilt” can be expressed as a noun and an adjective, respectively. Alternate translation: “we have committed wicked deeds and we are very guilty” (See: Parallelism and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- the heavens
- My God
- my God
- our iniquities
- and our guilt
- I am ashamed
- and disgraced
- our head
- my face

Translation Words - UST

- to the heavens
- Yahweh my God
- you
- The sins that we Israelites have committed are very great
- As for our guilt for committing those sins
- I am very ashamed
- I am very ashamed
- our heads
- in front of
Ezra 9:7

From the days of our fathers (ULT)
Since the time that our ancestors lived (UST)

“the time when our ancestors were alive”

very guilty...For our iniquities (ULT)
have been very guilty...That is the reason that...have been defeated (UST)

The abstract nouns “guilt” and “iniquity” can be translated as an adjective and a verb, respectively. Alternate translation: “very guilty...Because of the evil deeds we did” (See: Abstract Nouns)

we...have been delivered...into the hand of kings of (ULT)
we...and our kings and our (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “you gave us...into the hand of kings” (See: Active or Passive)

into the hand of kings of the lands (ULT)
and our kings and our...of other lands (UST)

Here “hand” represents power or control. Alternate translation: “were given into the control of the kings of this world” or “were given over to the kings of this world” (See: Metonymy)

to the sword, to captivity, and to plunder, and to ashamed faces (ULT)
They killed some of our people, they captured some, they robbed some, and they caused them all to be disgraced (UST)

The sword is a metonymy for people killing other people. The abstract nouns “captivity” and “plunder” can be stated as verb phrases. And, “faces” is a synecdoche representing the whole person. Alternate translation: “to our enemies to kill us, to capture us, to steal from us, and to cause us shame” (See: Metonymy and Abstract Nouns and Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- For our iniquities
- guilty
- and our priests
- our fathers
- into the hand of
- to captivity
- and to ashamed
- to the sword
- faces
- our kings
- kings of
That is the reason that...have been defeated
have been...guilty
priests
our ancestors lived
and our
they captured some
and they caused them all to be disgraced
They killed some of our people
and they caused them all to be disgraced
by the armies of the kings
and our kings
Ezra 9:8

grace has been shown from Yahweh our God (ULT)
Yahweh God, you have acted...some of us to survive (UST)

God deciding to be merciful is spoken of as if mercy were a person who could move. Alternate translation: “Yahweh our God has decided to be merciful to us and” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- in our bondage
- his holy
- our God
- our God
- Yahweh
- to leave
- a remnant

Translation Words - UST

- you have acted
- being slaves in Babylonia
- to live in this sacred place
- God
- You
- Yahweh
- You have allowed
- and allowed us to escape from

ULT

8 But now for a little while, grace has been shown from Yahweh our God to leave us a remnant, and to give us a peg in his holy place, that our God may enlighten our eyes and give us a little relief in our bondage.

UST

8 But now, Yahweh God, you have acted very kindly toward us. You have allowed some of us to survive. You have revived our spirits and allowed us to escape from being slaves in Babylonia and to return safely to live in this sacred place.
Ezra 9:9

but he extended covenant faithfulness to us (ULT)
Instead...to act very kindly toward us (UST)

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful” or “loyal.” See how you translated a similar phrase in Ezra 7:28. Alternate translation: “but he as been faithful to us” or “he has been loyal to us” (See: Abstract Nouns)

in the sight of the king of Persia (ULT)
because you are always faithful to your covenant with us, you caused...kings of Persia (UST)

The king could not literally see the temple, but he did know about what was happening in Jerusalem. Here “sight” is a metonym for what a person knows. Alternate translation: “so that the king of Persia knows about it” (See: Metonymy)

the house of our God (ULT)
the...temple...You (UST)

in order to give us...and to give...a wall (ULT)
You have allowed us to continue to live...have allowed us to start to (UST)

The wall that keeps people safe is a metaphor for Yahweh protecting his people. Alternate translation: “could keep us safe” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- but in our bondage
- our God
- covenant faithfulness
- in Judah
- Persia
- and in Jerusalem
- forsake us
- the king of
- slaves
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- We were slaves
- you
- You
- act very kindly toward us
- and in other towns in Judah
- of Persia
- here in Jerusalem
• did not abandon us
• you caused...kings
• We were slaves
• temple
Ezra 9:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- your commands
- our God
- we have forsaken

Translation Words - UST

- your commands
- Our God
- we have disobeyed

ULT
10 But now, our God, what can we say after this? For we have forsaken your commands.

UST
10 Our God, what more can we say now? In spite of all that you have done for us, we have disobeyed your commands.
Ezra 9:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- you commanded
- with their abominations
- the prophets
- impure
- with the impurity of
- through
- the people of
- your servants

**Translation Words - UST**

- They told us
- with people who
- the prophets
- was polluted because of
- the detestable things that were done
- you gave to your servants
- by the people who lived there
- you gave to your servants

ULT

11 which **you commanded through your servants, the prophets**, saying, “The land that you are entering to possess, it is an **impure land with the impurity of the people of the lands with their abominations**, which have filled it from one end to the other with their uncleanness.

UST

11 They are commands that **you gave to your servants, the prophets**, to tell to us. **They told us** that the land that we would occupy **was polluted because of the detestable things that were done by the people who lived there**. They said that the land was filled from one end to the other **with people who** did immoral things.
Ezra 9:12

ever...forever (ULT)
to...forever (UST)

“until the end of the ages”

Translation Words - ULT

• and leave it as a possession
• to their sons
• for your sons
• to your sons
• the good things of
• or prosperity
• you may be strong
• their peace
• seek

Translation Words - UST

• and the land would belong to
• their sons
• our sons to marry
• our descendants
• good crops that grow...the land
• even try to cause things...go well for those people
• our nation would be strong, and
• even try to cause things...go well for those people
• even try to cause things...go well for those people

ULT

12 Now therefore, do not give your daughters to their sons, and do not take their daughters for your sons, and do not ever seek their peace or prosperity, so that you may be strong and eat the good things of the land, and leave it as a possession to your sons forever.”

UST

12 They said that we should not allow our daughters to marry their sons! We should not allow our sons to marry their daughters! We should not even try to cause things to go well for those people! They said that if we obeyed these instructions, our nation would be strong, and we would enjoy the good crops that grow on the land, and the land would belong to our descendants forever.
Ezra 9:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• our God
• our iniquities
• and for our...guilt
• evil
• a remnant
• have punished us less than

Translation Words - UST

• you, our God
• deserve to be punished
• guilty
• But you punished us
• some of us to survive
• I say this because

ULT

13 Yet after all that has come on us for our evil deeds, and for our great guilt—for you, our God, have punished us less than our iniquities, and have given us a remnant like this—

UST

13 But you punished us because we were very guilty for having done wicked things. Still, you have not punished us as much as we deserve to be punished. I say this because you, our God, have allowed some of us to survive.
Ezra 9:14

should we again break your commandments and intermarry with the people of these abominations (ULT)

However, some of us are again disobeying your commands, and we are marrying women who do those detestable things (UST)

This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “it is very wrong that some of us have broken your commandments and made...people.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Would you not be angry...so that there would be no remnant or survivor (ULT)
you will get rid of all of us...none of us will remain alive (UST)

This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “I am afraid that you will be angry...escape.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• your commandments
• abominations
• remnant
• with the people
• you had consumed us

Translation Words - UST

• your commands
• do those detestable things
• none of us will remain alive
• us
• with the result that
Ezra 9:15

Look (ULT)
even though (UST)

“Pay attention to what I am about to say”

We are before you in our guilt (ULT)
guilty...to you (UST)

“You can see that we are all guilty”

no one can stand before you because of this (ULT)
We are only...we are praying...we do not deserve to be in your presence (UST)

“you do not think that any person is innocent”

Translation Words - ULT

• righteous
• God of
• in our guilt
• Yahweh
• Israel
• as a remnant

Translation Words - UST

• always do the right thing
• God
• guilty
• Yahweh
• of Israel
• who have escaped from
Ezra 10

Ezra 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Intermarriages

The people agree to divorce their Gentile wives. Many Jews were involved in these mixed marriages. Divorce should not normally have been common for the Jews to engage in, but marriage with non-Jewish women was not allowed.
Ezra 10:1

As Ezra was praying and confessing, weeping and throwing himself down (ULT)
While Ezra was kneeling down...and praying and crying (UST)

Ezra speaks of himself as if he were someone else. (See: Pronouns)

and throwing himself down (ULT)
was kneeling down (UST)
quickly went from standing to lying facedown

before the house of God (ULT)
in front of the temple (UST)
in front of the temple

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• and confessing
• from Israel
• As...was praying
• Ezra
• the people
• a...assembly...of
• the house of
• and throwing himself down

Translation Words - UST

• the temple
• and crying
• the Israelite
• and praying
• While Ezra
• Many people...also cried very much
• people had committed
• the temple
• was kneeling down

ULT
1 As Ezra was praying and confessing, weeping and throwing himself down before the house of God, a very great assembly from Israel of men, and women, and children gathered to him, for the people wept, greatly weeping.

UST
1 While Ezra was kneeling down in front of the temple and praying and crying, he was confessing the sins that the Israelite people had committed. Many people, men and women and children, gathered around him and also cried very much.
Ezra 10:2

Shekaniah (ULT)
Shecaniah (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 8:5.

Jehiel (ULT)
Jehiel (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 8:9.

We have been unfaithful to our God (ULT)
We have disobeyed God (UST)

This was made as a public confession, not as a boastful claim.

Translation Words - ULT

• have been unfaithful
• son of
• from the sons of
• to our God
• for Israel
• hope
• Elam, Elamites
• to Ezra
• from the people of
• foreign

Translation Words - UST

• have disobeyed
• son of
• clan
• God
• Israelite
• Israeli
• Elam, Elamites
• him
• people
• who are not Israelites
Ezra 10:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- my lord
- at the commandment of
- with our God
- our God
- and...according to the law
- a covenant
- and of those who tremble

Translation Words - UST

- and we will send them away
- told us
- our God
- our God
- in his laws
- We will make...with
- and the others who have an awesome respect for what

ULT
3 So now let us make a covenant with our God to send away all these wives and those who have been born to them, according to the counsel of my lord, and of those who tremble at the commandment of our God, and let it be done according to the law.

UST
3 We will do what you, and the others who have an awesome respect for what our God has commanded, tell us to do. We will do what God told us in his laws. We will make a covenant with our God, saying that we will divorce our wives who are not Israelites, and we will send them away with their children.
Ezra 10:4

and we are with you (ULT)
We will support you (UST)

“we will help you”

Translation Words - ULT
- Be strong

Translation Words - UST
- be courageous

ULT
4 Arise, for this matter is upon you, and we are with you. Be strong and do this.”

UST
4 It is your responsibility to tell us what to do. So get up, and be courageous, and do what is necessary. We will support you.”
Ezra 10:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the priests
- the Levites
- Ezra
- the heads of
- and made...take an oath
- and so they took an oath

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite people
- of the priests
- descendants of Levi, and
- So Ezra
- leaders
- solemnly declare
- solemnly promised to do that

ULT
5 So Ezra rose and made the heads of the priests, the Levites, and all Israel take an oath that they would do according to this word, and so they took an oath.

UST
5 So Ezra stood up and demanded that the leaders of the priests, the descendants of Levi, and all the other Israelite people solemnly declare that they would do what Shecaniah said that they should do. So they all solemnly promised to do that.
Ezra 10:6

Jehohanan...Eliashib (ULT)
Jehohanan lived...Jehohanan lived (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• God
• the faithlessness of
• Ezra
• the exiles
• bread
• he was mourning
• the house of

Translation Words - UST

• Jehohanan lived
• God's laws
• faithfully obeyed
• Ezra
• had returned
• anything
• He was still sad because some of the Israelites who
• the temple

ULT

6 Then Ezra rose up from before the house of God and went to the rooms of Jehohanan son of Eliashib. When he went there, he ate no bread and drank no water, because he was mourning concerning the faithlessness of the exiles.

UST

6 Then Ezra went away from in front of the temple and went to the room where Jehohanan lived. He stayed there that night, but he did not eat or drink anything. He was still sad because some of the Israelites who had returned from Babylonia had not faithfully obeyed God's laws.
Ezra 10:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Judah
- and Jerusalem
- in Jerusalem
- the captivity

Translation Words - UST

- from Babylonia
- in Judah
- in Jerusalem and in other towns
- Jerusalem immediately
- had returned

ULT
7 So they sent a proclamation throughout Judah and Jerusalem to all the sons of the captivity that they must assemble in Jerusalem.

UST
7 Then the leaders sent a message to all the people in Jerusalem and in other towns in Judah, saying that all those who had returned from Babylonia should come to Jerusalem immediately.
Ezra 10:8

Everyone who did not come...all his property would be forfeited, and he would be excluded (ULT)
that if...did not arrive...they would order that all...any of them...the property of those people be taken from them, and that they must no longer be considered (UST)

"The officials would take all the possessions away from anyone who did not come...and would excuse them" or "The people of Judah and Jerusalem would take all the possessions away from anyone who did not come...and would exclude them"

in three days (ULT)
within three days (UST)

3 days (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• the exiles
• from the assembly of
• and the elders
• the officials

Translation Words - UST

• they would be considered to be foreigners
• to belong to the Israelite people
• The leaders
• The leaders
So all the men of Judah and Benjamin gathered in Jerusalem in three days. It was the ninth month, on the twentieth day of the month. All the people sat in the square of the house of God, trembling because of this matter, and because of the rains.

This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. The twentieth day is near the middle of December on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

They were trembling because it was raining hard and because they were worried that they would be punished for what they had done.
Ezra 10:10

have acted unfaithfully (ULT)
Some of you men have committed an act of treason against God (UST)

The abstract noun “treason” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “helped the enemies of your people” (See: Abstract Nouns)

adding to the guilt of Israel (ULT)
to...By doing that, you have made us Israelite people more guilty than we were before (UST)

“and now God considers us guilty of worse sin than before”

Translation Words - ULT

• the guilt of
• Israel
• have acted unfaithfully
• the priest
• Ezra
• foreign

Translation Words - UST

• guilty
• Israelite people
• Some of you men have committed an act of treason against God
• Ezra
• Ezra
• who are not Israelites

ULT
10 Then Ezra the priest arose and said to them, “You have acted unfaithfully, and have taken foreign wives, adding to the guilt of Israel.

UST
10 Then Ezra stood up and said to them, “Some of you men have committed an act of treason against God. You have married women who are not Israelites. By doing that, you have made us Israelite people more guilty than we were before.
Ezra 10:11

separate yourselves (ULT)
Separate yourselves from the (UST)
move away from, be different from
Translation Words - ULT
  • God of
  • praise
  • separate yourselves
  • to Yahweh
  • his will
  • your fathers
  • from the people of
  • foreign
Translation Words - UST
  • the God whom
  • you must worship
  • Separate yourselves from the
  • Yahweh
  • what he wants
  • your ancestors worshiped
  • people
  • and from the women from those nations whom you have married

ULT
11 But now give praise to Yahweh, God of your fathers, and do his will—separate yourselves from the people of the land, and from the foreign women.”

UST
11 So now you must worship Yahweh, the God whom your ancestors worshiped, and you must do what he wants. Separate yourselves from the people of other nations and from the women from those nations whom you have married.”
Ezra 10:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the assembly

Translation Words - UST

- group

ULT

12 All the assembly answered and said in a loud voice, “Right! According to your word, thus we must do.

UST

12 The whole group answered, shouting loudly, “Yes, what you have said is right! We will do what you have said.
Ezra 10:13

and this is not the work of one or two days (ULT)
we are a very...group...two days...here in this rain (UST)

This litotes can be translated in positive form. Alternate translation: “we will need a long time to do all this work” (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT
- we have transgressed
- there are...people

Translation Words - UST
- who have committed this evil sin
- us

ULT
13 However, there are many people, and it is the rainy season. We have no strength to stand outside, and this is not the work of one or two days, for we have transgressed greatly in this matter.

UST
13 But we are a very large group, and it is raining hard. Also, there are many of us who have committed this evil sin. This is something that we cannot take care of in one or two days, and we cannot stand here in this rain.
Ezra 10:14

at the appointed time with the elders and judges of each of their cities (ULT)
at a time...you decide. They should come with the elders and judges...each city (UST)

This can be translated in active form and as separate sentences. Alternate translation: “at the time that you will determine. Let them come with the city elder and the city judges” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- our God
- appointed
- the...wrath of
- and judges
- the assembly
- the elders...of
- the heads of
- foreign

Translation Words - UST

- If we do that, our God
- you decide
- angry
- and judges
- us
- the elders
- our leaders
- who is not Israelite

ULT

14 Now let the heads of all the assembly stand, and let all those in our cities who have taken foreign wives come at the appointed time with the elders and judges of each of their cities, until the fierce wrath of our God is turned away from us, even in this matter."

UST

14 So allow our leaders to decide for all of us what we should do. Tell everyone who has married a woman who is not Israelite to come at a time that you decide. They should come with the elders and judges from each city. If we do that, our God will stop being angry with us because of what we have done.”
Ezra 10:15

Jonathan...Asahel and Jahzeiah...Tikvah...and Meshullam and Shabbethai (ULT)
Jonathan...Asahel, and Jahzeiah...Tikvah...and Meshullam and Shabbethai (UST)

men's names (See: How to Translate Names)

Jonathan son of Asahel and Jahzeiah son of Tikvah opposed this (ULT)
Jonathan...son of Asahel, and Jahzeiah son of Tikvah disagreed with this (UST)

Possible meanings are, 1) these men did not want the city officials to investigate the offenses or 2) they did not want anyone to investigate the people's marriages.

Translation Words - ULT

• son of
• son of
• the Levite

Translation Words - UST

• son of
• son of
• a descendant of Levi
Ezra 10:16

So...did this (ULT)
But all the others who (UST)

The people investigated who had married non-Jewish wives.

The people investigated who had married non-Jewish wives.

on the first day of the tenth month (ULT)
day of the tenth month...came (UST)

This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of December on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• the sons of
• selected
• by name
• the priest
• Ezra
• their fathers
• fathers
• the exile
• heads of
• to examine
• according to their

Translation Words - UST

• from Babylonia
• chose leaders
• and I wrote down their names
• these men
• So Ezra
• of each of the clans
• and I wrote down their names
• had returned
• On the first
• to investigate the matter
• and I wrote down their names

ULT
16 So the sons of the exile did this. Ezra the priest selected men, heads of their fathers, according to their fathers—all of them by name, and they sat down on the first day of the tenth month to examine the matter,

UST
16 But all the others who had returned from Babylonia said that they would do it. So Ezra chose leaders of each of the clans, and I wrote down their names. On the first day of the tenth month these men came and sat down to investigate the matter.
Ezra 10:17

the first day of the first month (ULT)
By the first day of the first month of the next year (UST)

This is near the middle of March on Western calendars. (See: Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• foreign

Translation Words - UST

• who were not Israelites

ULT
17 and they finished with all the men who had married foreign women by the first day of the first month.

UST
17 By the first day of the first month of the next year they had finished determining which men had married women who were not Israelites.
Ezra 10:18

Jeshua (ULT)
Jeshua (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 2:2.

Jozadak (ULT)
sons of Jehozadak (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 3:2.

Maaseiah...and Gedaliah (ULT)
there were Maaseiah...and Gedaliah (UST)

names of men (See: How to Translate Names)

and Eliezer, and Jarib (ULT)
Eliezer, Jarib (UST)

See how you translated this in Ezra 8:16.

Translation Words - ULT

• and his brothers
• Among the sons of
• the sons of
• son of
• the priests
• foreign

Translation Words - UST

• and his brothers, who were
• of the names
• and the clans to which they belonged
• In the clan of
• of the priests
• non-Jewish women
Ezra 10:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and being guilty
- their hand
- from the flock
- their guilt
- a ram

Translation Words - UST

- sacrificed
- They solemnly promised
- and they each
- an offering to atone for their sins
- a ram

ULT

19 So they gave their hand to send away their wives, and being guilty, a ram from the flock for their guilt.

UST

19 They solemnly promised to divorce their wives, and each sacrificed a ram to be an offering to atone for their sins.
Ezra 10:20

General Information:
Ezra continues to list the men who married non-Jewish women.

Immer (ULT)
Immer (UST)
a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:37.

Hanani (ULT)
there were Hanani (UST)
a man's name (See: How to Translate Names)

and Zebadiah (ULT)
and Zebadiah (UST)
a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:8. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST
• In the clan of
Ezra 10:21

Harim (ULT)
of Harim (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:32. (See: How to Translate Names)

Maaseiah (ULT)
there were Maaseiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Shemaiah, and Jehiel (ULT)
Shemaiah, Jehiel (UST)

These are the names of men. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:13. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
Ezra 10:22

Pashhur (ULT)
of Pashhur (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:37.

Elioenai, Maaseiah, Ishmael, Nethanel (ULT)
there were Elioenai, Maaseiah, Ishmael, Nethanel (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jozabad (ULT)
Jozabad (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:33. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
Ezra 10:23

General Information:
Ezra continues to list the men who married non-Jewish women. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jozabad (ULT) were Jozabad (UST)
This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:33. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
• the Levites

Translation Words - UST
• of Levi

ULT
23 Among the Levites: Jozabad, and Shimei, and Kelaiah (that is, Kelita), Pethahiah, Judah, and Eliezer.

UST
23 The descendants of Levi who had married non-Jewish women were Jozabad, Shimei, Kelaiah (whose other name was Kelita), Pethahiah, Judah, and Eliezer.
Ezra 10:24

Eliashib (ULT)
Eliashib (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:6. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shallum (ULT)
there were Shallum (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:42. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• the gatekeepers

Translation Words - UST

• the temple guards
Ezra 10:25

Parosh (ULT)
of Parosh (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:3. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Eleazar (ULT)
Eleazar (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 7:5. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• among the sons of
• Among the rest of Israel

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
• This is a list of the names of the other Israelites who had married foreign wives

ULT

25 Among the rest of Israel—among the sons of Parosh: Ramiah, and Izziah, and Malkijah, and Mijamin, and Eleazar, and Malkijah, and Beniah. [T]

UST

25 This is a list of the names of the other Israelites who had married foreign wives: In the clan of Parosh there were Ramiah, Izziah, Malkijah, Mijamin, Eleazar, Malkijah, and Beniah.
Ezra 10:26

General Information:

Ezra continues to list the men who married non-Jewish women. (See: How to Translate Names)

Elam (ULT)
of Elam (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 2:7. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Jehiel (ULT)
Jehiel (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 8:9. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of
• Elam

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
• of Elam

ULT
26 Among the sons of Elam: Mattaniah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, and Abdi, and Jeremoth, and Elijah.

UST
26 In the clan of Elam there were Mattaniah, Zechariah, Jehiel, Abdi, Jeremoth, and Elijah.
Ezra 10:27

Zattu (ULT)
of Zattu (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 2:8. (See: How to Translate Names)

Elioenai (ULT)
there were Elioenai (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 10:22. (See: How to Translate Names)

Eliashib (ULT)
Eliashib (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 10:6. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
Ezra 10:28

Bebai (ULT)
of Bebai (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:11. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jehohanan (ULT)
there were Jehohanan (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:6. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
Ezra 10:29

Bani (ULT)
of Bani (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 2:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Meshullam (ULT)
there were Meshullam (UST)

See how you translated this man's name in Ezra 8:16. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- In the clan
Ezra 10:30

General Information:
Ezra continues to list the men who married non-Jewish women. (See: How to Translate Names)

Pahath-Moab (ULT)
of Pahath-Moab (UST)
This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:4. (See: How to Translate Names)

Benaiah (ULT)
Benaiah (UST)
This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:25. (See: How to Translate Names)

Maaseiah (ULT)
Maaseiah (UST)
This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mattaniah (ULT)
Mattaniah (UST)
This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:26. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Binnui (ULT)
Binnui (UST)
This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:33. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST
- In the clan
Ezra 10:31

Malkijah (ULT)
Malkijah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:25. (See: How to Translate Names)

Harim (ULT)
of Harim (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:32. (See: How to Translate Names)

Eliezer (ULT)
there were Eliezer (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:16. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
Ezra 10:32

Malluk (ULT)
Malluk (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:29. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 10:33

General Information:

Ezra continues to list the men who married non-Jewish women. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hashum (ULT)
of Hashum (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:19 (See: How to Translate Names)

Zabad (ULT)
Zabad (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

Eliphelet (ULT)
Eliphelet (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:13. (See: How to Translate Names)

Manasseh (ULT)
Manasseh (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:30. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Shimei (ULT)
and Shimei (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:23. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
Ezra 10:34

Bani (ULT) of Bani (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:10. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
Ezra 10:35

Benaiah (ULT)
Benaiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:23. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 10:36

Meremoth (ULT)
Meremoth (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:33. (See: How to Translate Names)

Eliashib (ULT)
Eliashib (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:6. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 10:37

**General Information:**

Ezra continues to list the men who married non-Jewish women. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mattaniah (ULT)
Mattaniah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:26. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mattenai (ULT)
Mattenai (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:33. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 10:38

Binnui (ULT)
In the clan of Binnui (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:33. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shimei (ULT)
Shimei (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:23. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 10:39

and Adaiah (ULT)
Adaiah (UST)

This is a man’s name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:26. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 10:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)
Ezra 10:41

**General Information:**

Ezra finishes to list the men who married non-Jewish women. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Shelemiah (ULT)
Shelemiah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:39. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shemariah (ULT)
Shemariah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:32. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 10:42

Shallum (ULT)
Shallum (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:42. (See: How to Translate Names)

Amariah (ULT)
Amariah (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 7:3. (See: How to Translate Names)
Ezra 10:43

Nebo (ULT)  
of Nebo (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 2:29. (See: How to Translate Names)

Jeiel (ULT)  
there were Jeiel (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 8:13. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zabad (ULT)  
Zabad (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:27. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zebina...Jaddai...Joel

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

and Benai (ULT)  
and Benai (UST)

This is a man's name. See how you translated this in Ezra 10:25. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Among the sons of

Translation Words - UST

• In the clan
Ezra 10:44

All of these (ULT)
Each of those men (UST)

all the men in the list beginning in Ezra 10:20

Translation Words - ULT

• sons
• foreign

Translation Words - UST

• children
• who was not an Israelite

ULT

44 All of these had married foreign wives, and there were some of these wives by whom they had sons. [5]


10:29 [2] Instead of Bani, some modern versions have Bigvai.

10:38 [3] Instead of Among the sons of Binnui: Shimei, some modern versions have Bani, Binnui, Shimei.

10:40 [4] Instead of Maknadebai, some modern versions have Among the descendants of Zaccai.

10:44 [5] Instead of by whom they had sons, some modern versions have but sent them away with their sons.

UST

44 Each of those men had married a woman who was not an Israelite, and some of them had children by those women.
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract Nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

Examples from the Bible

...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...from childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial.

But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.

But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved...

Today God has saved the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king’s servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... ( Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea ( Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. ( Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. ( Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. ( Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns

[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Assumed Knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

**Implicit Information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

**Description**

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

**Examples from the Bible**

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But
it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all assumed knowledge.

An important piece of implicit information here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged because they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was assumed knowledge that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you. or:

At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.
Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The "long" cubit is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Metric Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>handbreadth</td>
<td>8 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>span</td>
<td>23 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubit</td>
<td>46 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“long” cubit</td>
<td>54 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stadia</td>
<td>185 meters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.
Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half kubits; its width will be one kubit and a half; and its height will be one kubit and a half.”

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.
“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter\(^1\); its width will be two thirds of a meter\(^2\); and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: Ezra 6:3)
Biblical Money

Description:
In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit in OT</th>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>daric</td>
<td>gold coin</td>
<td>8.4 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>various metals</td>
<td>11 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>various metals</td>
<td>33 kilograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit in NT</th>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Day's Wage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>denarius/denarii</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drachma</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mite</td>
<td>copper coin</td>
<td>1/64 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>4 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>silver</td>
<td>6,000 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament:

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.
The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

“The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins.”

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

“The one owed five hundred days’ wages, and the other owed fifty days’ wages.”

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

“The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] five hundred days’s wages
[2] fifty day’s wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

“The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

(Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

(Go back to: Ezra 2:69; 8:27)
Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Liters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>omer</td>
<td>2 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>ephah</td>
<td>22 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>homer</td>
<td>220 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>cor</td>
<td>220 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>seah</td>
<td>7.7 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>lethek</td>
<td>114.8 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>metrete</td>
<td>40 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>22 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>hin</td>
<td>3.7 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>kab</td>
<td>1.23 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>log</td>
<td>0.31 liters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

• The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
• Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
• Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
• If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
• When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.
When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa.”

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters.”

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters 1, and 220 liters 2 of seed will yield only twenty-two liters 3.”

The footnotes would look like:
When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.

[1] one bath
[2] one homer
[3] one ephah

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]
(Go back to: Ezra 7:22)
Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Shekels</th>
<th>Grams</th>
<th>Kilograms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>1 shekel</td>
<td>11 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bekah</td>
<td>1/2 shekel</td>
<td>5.7 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pim</td>
<td>2/3 shekel</td>
<td>7.6 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerah</td>
<td>1/20 shekel</td>
<td>0.57 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mina</td>
<td>50 shekels</td>
<td>550 grams</td>
<td>1/2 kilogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>3,000 shekels</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>34 kilograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.
Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

1. **The bronze from the offering weighed** seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

   (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

   (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles.**

   (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **2,400 kilograms.**

   (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **5,300 pounds.**

   (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms).**

   (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

   “The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.**

   [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

The footnote would look like:

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc/en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]
[[rc/en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: Ezra 2:69; 7:22; 8:26)
Hebrew Months

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called Nisan after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.
**Tebeth** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

**Shebat** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

**Adar** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

**Examples from the Bible**

- You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the **month of Abib**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)
- You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in **the first month of the year**, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

**Translation Strategies**

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information.)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

The examples below use these two verses.

*At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

*It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,* you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

(1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

*At that time, you will appear before me in the first month of the year,* which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

(2) Use the months that people know.

*At that time, you will appear before me in the month of March,* which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

*It will always be a statute for you that on the day I choose in late September you must humble yourselves and do no work.*

(3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

*It will always be a statute for you that in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month,* you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.
It will always be a statute for you that in \textit{the day I choose in early autumn}\footnote{The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”} you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

\footnote{The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”}

\textcolor{red}{(Go back to: Ezra 3:1; 3:6; 3:8; 6:15; 6:19; 7:8; 7:9; 8:31; 10:9; 10:16; 10:17)}
How to Translate Names

Description
The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names
Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue
- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the *Jordan* and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the *city of Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *tribe of the Amorites*

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him *Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')*, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But Saul**

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

**But Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But Saul**

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

**But Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:
Next we recommend you learn about:
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
  1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,** but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do,** for they think that **they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed...
(Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, “Everyone is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, “Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies.” (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

or:

Many of the country of Judea and many of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: Ezra 1:2; 4:16)
Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

- he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)
- The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.
- I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)
- The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.
- Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)
- This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”
  
the one who *lifts up my head* (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

**Translation Strategies**

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “*Look, we are your flesh and bone.*” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all *belong to the same nation.*

he resolutely set his face
to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, *determined to reach it.*

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

.(Luke 7:6 ULT)

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

“My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my *eyes out*

(Go back to: Ezra 2:1; 3:3)
Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are not the least among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

.(1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
“Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”
“Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: Ezra 4:22; 10:13)
Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the Topic. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the Image to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the Idea that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the Point of Comparison.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The Topic, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The Image, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The Idea, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical Image to apply an abstract Idea to the speaker's Topic.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a Topic, with at least one Point of Comparison (Idea) between the Topic and the Image. Often in metaphors, the Topic and the Image are explicitly stated, but the Idea is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the Topic and the Image and to figure out for themselves the Idea that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

**Active Metaphors**

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
> (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central **Idea** of the metaphor, but often the **Idea** is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

Listen to this word, *you cows of Bashan*, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the **Topic**) as if they were cows (the **Image**). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; *we are the clay. You are our potter*, and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The **Topic(s)** are “we” and “you,” and the **Image(s)** are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The **Idea** being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that *neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.*
Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the Idea) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the Idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

- And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay
  - You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

(4) If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

- Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad
  - (Acts 26:14 ULT)

(5) If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay
  - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
  - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

- Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

- Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

- (Acts 26:14 ULT)

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become fishers of men.

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become people who gather men. Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

• as a shorter way of referring to something
• to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonym, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

“He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

“The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David.”

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

“who warned you to flee from God’s coming punishment?”

To learn about some common metonyms, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonyms.

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

- Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

- That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

- When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

- Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language’s words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

• Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
• Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
• Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
• Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
• Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
• Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The unfoldingWord® Literal Text (ULT) and the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)
Next we recommend you learn about:

Ordinal Numbers
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>one hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>one thousandth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row
This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jehoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

(Go back to: Ezra 1:1; 3:1; 3:6; 3:8; 6:15; 6:19; 7:8; 7:9; 8:31; 10:9; 10:16; 10:17)
Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles’ letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

**(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.**

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God’s word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

**(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.**

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere, keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

**(3) The second completes what is said in the first.**
I lift up my voice to Yahweh, 
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, 
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, 
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Allah sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

(Go back to: Ezra 9:6)
Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are “I”, “you”, “he”, “it”, “this”, “that”, “himself”, “someone”, and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw himself
  in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.
Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who
  built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- I saw the house that
  John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man who
  built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- Have you seen this
  here?
- Who is that
  over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to anyone
  
- Someone
  fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They
  say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: Ezra 10:1)
Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, “Is this how you insult God's high priest?” (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.
And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, “Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?” If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? *None of you would do that!*

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

*This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...*

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

*You should not insult God's high priest!*

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

*I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!*

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

*How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!*

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

*You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?*

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

*Or what man among you is there who*

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, *would you give him a stone?*

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

*What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?* Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: Ezra 4:22; 7:23; 9:14)
Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

**Description**

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were *like sheep without a shepherd*. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as *sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise as *serpents* and harmless as *doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

**Purposes of Simile**

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

**Examples from the Bible**

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for *as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky*, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.
Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus’ disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

(Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings,

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)
See, I send you out among *people who will want to harm you*.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to *protect you*, but you refused!

(Go back to: Ezra 3:1)
Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

"My soul exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)

"I exalt the Lord."

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands
had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

(Go back to: Ezra 1:1; 3:12; 5:5; 9:7)
Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

**Description**

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

**Translation Principles**

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

**Examples from the Bible**

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)
People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

**Translation Strategies**

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like milk your sins...will be white like the moon

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh.

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.

*We have here only five loaves of* bread
and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

- We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

- I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*

*We have here only five* loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

- We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- *to him who made* great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

- *to him who made* the *sun and the moon*

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

*How to Translate Names*

(Go back to: Ezra 3:10)
unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14
abomination, abominable

Definition:
The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

• The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
• Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
• In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
• Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
• The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

• Ezra 09:1-2
• Genesis 46:34
• Isaiah 01:13
• Matthew 24:15
• Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

(Go back to: Ezra 9:1; 9:11; 9:14)
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3198, H6818, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

(Go back to: Ezra 4:6)
adversary, enemy

Definition:
An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: Ezra 4:1)
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:
The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:5; 7:14; 7:15; 7:28; 8:25)
Ai

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethel, Jericho)

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 07:03
- Joshua 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5857

(Go back to: Ezra 2:28)
alien, foreign, foreigner

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 10:2; 10:10; 10:11; 10:14; 10:17; 10:18; 10:44)
altar

Definition:
An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the altar to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:
- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: Ezra 3:2; 3:3; 7:17)
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

**Definition:**

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, sign)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

**Word Data:**


(See also: miracle, sign)
Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Benjamin, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, Jordan River, Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: Ezra 9:1)
Amorite

Facts:
The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the Amorite armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the Amorites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:
The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(See back to: Ezra 1:5; 2:59; 2:68; 3:12; 4:2; 4:3; 4:15; 5:12; 7:27; 8:1; 8:28; 8:29; 9:7; 10:11; 10:16)
appoint, appointed

Definition:
The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 3:8; 3:9; 8:20; 10:14)
Artaxerxes

Facts:
Artaxerxes was a king who reigned over the Persian empire from about 464 to 424 BC.

- During Artaxerxes' reign, the Israelites from Judah were in exile in Babylon, which was under the control of Persia at that time.
- Artaxerxes allowed Ezra the priest and other Jewish leaders to leave Babylon and go back to Jerusalem to teach the Israelites the Law of God.
- Later during this time, Artaxerxes also allowed his cupbearer Nehemiah to return to Jerusalem to lead the Jews in rebuilding the walls surrounding the city.
- Because Babylon was under the rule of Persia, Artaxerxes was sometimes called the "king of Babylon."
- Note that Artaxerxes is not the same person as Xerxes (Ahasuerus).

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Ahasuerus, Babylon, cupbearer, Ezra, Nehemiah, Persia)

Bible References:
- Ezra 04:7-8
- Ezra 07:1-5
- Nehemiah 02:01
- Nehemiah 13:6-7

Word Data:
- Strong's: H783

(Go back to: Ezra 4:7; 4:8; 4:11; 4:23; 6:14; 7:1; 7:7; 7:11; 7:12; 7:21; 8:1)
Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: descendant, harp, lute, prophet, psalm, trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 02:08
- Psalm 050:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H623

(Go back to: Ezra 2:41; 3:10)
**Definition:**

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

**Old Testament**

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

**New Testament**

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Ezra 2:64; 9:4; 10:1; 10:8; 10:12; 10:14)
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:
Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

• The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
• The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
• In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
• The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:
• Genesis 10:11
• Genesis 25:17-18
• Isaiah 07:16-17
• Jeremiah 50:17
• Micah 07:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 20:02 So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
• 20:03 The Assyrians gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to Assyria.
• 20:04 Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:
• Strong’s: H804, H1121

(Go back to: Ezra 4:2; 6:22)
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: synecdoche)

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:06 About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. Babylon was a powerful empire.
- 20:07 But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon. So, the Babylonians came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:09 Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- 20:11 About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated Babylon.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: Ezra 1:11; 2:1; 4:9; 5:12; 5:13; 5:14; 5:17; 6:1; 6:5; 7:6; 7:9; 7:16; 8:1)
Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: Ezra 1:5; 4:1; 10:9)
Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel,” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, altar, Jacob, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:01
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 01:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1008

(Go back to: Ezra 2:28)
bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:


(See back to: Ezra 9:8; 9:9)
bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:
To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:07 God saw that it was good and he blessed them.
- 01:15 God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He blessed them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- 01:16 So God rested from all he had been doing. He blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 04:04 “I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”
- 04:07 Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram.”
- 07:03 Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau.
• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

*(Go back to: Ezra 7:27)*
**bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee**

**Definition:**

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: Ezra 10:1)
bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: Ezra 10:6)
bronze

Definition:
The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(See back to: Ezra 8:27)
brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: Ezra 3:2; 3:8; 3:9; 6:20; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:24; 10:18)
burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: Ezra 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 6:9; 8:35)
camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, clean)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: Ezra 2:67)
Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah’s sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term “Canaan” or the “land of Canaan” also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **04:09** “I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants.”
- **05:03** “I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever.”
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: Ezra 9:1)
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners."
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, sacrifice, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:13
- Zechariah 11:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

(Go back to: Ezra 3:7)
Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:4-5
- Ezekiel 01:01
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

(Go back to: Ezra 5:12)
chief

Definition:
The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: Ezra 5:10; 7:5; 8:17; 8:24; 8:29; 9:1; 9:2; 10:5; 10:8; 10:14)
**clean, wash**

**Definition:**

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29
• Colossians 03:05
• 1 Thessalonians 04:07
• James 04:08

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Ezra 6:20; 9:11)*
command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:


commander

Definition:

The term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

  • A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
  • This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
  • Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
  • The term to “command” an army could be translated as to “lead” or to “be in charge of.”

(See also: command, ruler, centurion)

Bible References:

  • 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
  • 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
  • Daniel 02:14
  • Mark 06:21-22
  • Proverbs 06:07

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

(Go back to: Ezra 4:21; 5:5)
confess, confession

Definition:
To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(See back to: Ezra 10:1; 10:11)
consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:
To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:
- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: Ezra 3:5)
consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 9:14)
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don't be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, fear, strength)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6
Word Data:

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: Ezra 1:6; 7:28; 9:12; 10:4)
covenant

Definition:
In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:
- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: Ezra 10:3)
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love,” “loyal, committed love,” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(See back to: Ezra 3:11; 7:28; 9:9)
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:
The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2:3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 6:9; 6:17; 7:17; 8:35)
Cyrus

Facts:

Cyrus was a Persian king who founded the Persian empire in about 550 BC, through military conquest. In history he was also known as Cyrus the Great.

- King Cyrus conquered the city of Babylon, which led to the release of the Israelites who had been kept in exile there.
- Cyrus was known for his tolerant attitude toward the people of the nations he conquered. His kindness toward the Jews led to the rebuilding of the Jerusalem temple after the exile.
- Cyrus was reigning during the time when Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah were living.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Daniel, Darius, Ezra, Nehemiah, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 36:23
- Daniel 01:21
- Ezra 05:13
- Isaiah 44:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3566

(Go back to: Ezra 1:1; 1:2; 1:7; 1:8; 3:7; 4:3; 4:5; 5:13; 5:14; 5:17; 6:3; 6:14)
Darius

Facts:

Darius was the name of several kings of Persia. It is possible that “Darius” was a title rather than a name.

• “Darius the Mede” was the king who was tricked into having the prophet Daniel thrown into a lion’s den as punishment for worshiping God.
• “Darius the Persian” helped facilitate the reconstruction of the temple in Jerusalem during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Persia, Babylon, Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

• Ezra 04:4-6
• Haggai 01:01
• Nehemiah 12:22
• Zechariah 01:01

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1867, H1868

(Go back to: Ezra 4:5; 4:24; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 6:1; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:15)
David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 God chose a young Israelite named David to be king after Saul. David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:03 David was also a great soldier and leader. When David was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- 17:04 Saul became jealous of the people's love for David. Saul tried many times to kill him, so David hid from Saul.
- 17:05 God blessed David and made him successful. David fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 17:09 David ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was. David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, David followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: Ezra 3:10; 8:20)
declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:
The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ezra 2:61; 8:21)
decree, decreed

Definition:

The term "decree" means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a "decree."

- A "decree" is similar to a "law," but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term "decree" could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: command, declare, law)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:13
- Esther 01:22
- Luke 02:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:8; 4:9; 4:17; 4:19; 4:21; 5:7; 5:11; 5:13; 5:17; 6:1; 6:3; 6:8; 6:11; 6:12; 7:13; 7:21; 8:36)
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem's repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Kings 07:51
- 1 Timothy 04:05
- 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 02:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

(Go back to: Ezra 6:16; 6:17)
defile, defiled

Definition:
The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: clean, clean)

Bible References:
- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435

(Go back to: Ezra 2:62)
**deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue**

**Definition:**
To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

**Bible References:**
- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

**Word Data:**

(Go back to: Ezra 8:31; 9:8; 9:13)
descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:09 "The woman's descendant will crush your head, and you will wound his heel."
- 04:09 "I give the land of Canaan to your descendants."
- 05:10 "Your descendants will be more than the stars in the sky."
- 17:07 "Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your descendants!"
- 18:13 The kings of Judah were descendants of David.
- 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own descendants.
- 48:13 God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his descendants. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special descendant of David.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:1; 6:16; 6:19; 6:20)
**destroy, destruction, annihilate**

**Definition:**

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means, “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Ezra 4:15; 5:12; 6:12)*
die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

• To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
• The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

• Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
• This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
• This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

• To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
• In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
• Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
• In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
• In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
• The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
• The expression "put to death" could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 15:21
• 1 Thessalonians 04:17
• Acts 10:42
• Acts 14:19
• Colossians 02:15
• Colossians 02:20
• Genesis 02:15-17
• Genesis 34:27
• Matthew 16:28
• Romans 05:10
• Romans 05:12
• Romans 06:10

436 / 625
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 7:26)
dishonor, dishonorable

Definition:
The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

• The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
• Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
• Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
• The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
• The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
• This could be translated as to “not honor” or to “treat with no respect.”
• The noun “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
• Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: disgrace, honor)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 04:10
• 1 Samuel 20:34
• 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
• Ezekiel 22:07
• John 08:48
• Leviticus 18:08

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6172, H6173, H7034, H7043, G818, G819, G820, G2617

(Go back to: Ezra 4:14)
dominion

Definition:
The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(Go back to: Ezra 4:16)
**donkey, mule**

**Definition:**

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: Ezra 2:67)
Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to Egypt. Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to _Egypt_ to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to Egypt with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in Egypt.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: Ezra 9:1)
Elam, Elamites

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Noah, Shem)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- Acts 02:09
- Ezra 08:4-7
- Isaiah 22:06

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5867, H5962, G1639

(Go back to: Ezra 2:7; 2:31; 4:9; 10:2; 10:26)
elder, older, old

Definition:
The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: Ezra 5:5; 5:9; 6:7; 6:8; 6:14; 10:8; 10:14)
**evil, wicked, unpleasant**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person's character, “wicked” may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:12; 9:13)
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the sheep will be scattered.’”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 6:9; 6:17; 7:17; 8:35; 10:19)
Ezra

Facts:

Ezra was an Israelite priest and expert in Jewish law who recorded the history of the Israelites’ return to Jerusalem from Babylon where Israel had been held captive for 70 years.

- Ezra recorded this part of Israel's history in the biblical book of Ezra. He may also have written the book of Nehemiah, since these two books had originally been one single book.
- When Ezra returned to Jerusalem he re-established the Law, since the Israelites had stopped obeying the Sabbath laws and had intermarried with women who practiced pagan religions.
- Ezra also helped rebuild the temple, which had been destroyed by the Babylonians when they captured Jerusalem.
- There are two other men named Ezra mentioned in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, exile, Jerusalem, law, Nehemiah, temple)

Bible References:

- Ezra 07:06
- Nehemiah 08:1-3
- Nehemiah 12:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H250, H5830, H5831

face, facial

Definition:
The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: Ezra 9:6; 9:7)
fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
- The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:01 Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he fasted for forty days and forty nights.
- 34:08 "For example, I fast two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive."
- 46:10 One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: Ezra 8:21; 8:23; 9:5)
fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term “dread” refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere,” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or, “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or, “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 3:3)
feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 3:4; 3:5; 6:22)
flock, herd

Definition:
In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only "flocks," and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only "herds."

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 10:19)
forsake, forsaken, leave

**Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: Ezra 8:22; 9:9; 9:10)
found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(See also: Ezra 3:6; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 4:12; 5:16; 6:3)
freewill offering

Definition:
A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: burnt offering, Ezra, feast, grain offering, guilt offering, law, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:06
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

(Go back to: Ezra 1:4; 1:6; 2:68; 3:5; 7:13; 7:15; 7:16; 8:28)
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:04 John fulfilled what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- 40:03 The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they fulfilled a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- 42:07 Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be fulfilled.”
- 43:05 “This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- 43:07 “This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- 44:05 “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: Ezra 1:1)
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:
A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

• A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
• To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
• A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:
• Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
• The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:
• Acts 09:24
• Acts 10:18
• Deuteronomy 21:18-19
• Genesis 19:01
• Genesis 24:60
• Matthew 07:13

Word Data:
• Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

( Go back to: Ezra 2:42; 2:70; 7:7; 7:24; 10:24)
**Definition:**

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H689, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

(Go back to: Ezra 6:17; 8:35)
God

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
  NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:01 God created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- 01:15 God made man and woman in his own image.
- 05:03 "I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- 09:14 God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever."
- 10:02 Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- 16:01 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- 22:07 You, my son, will be called the prophet of the Most High God who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!
- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 25:07 "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- 28:01 "There is only one who is good, and that is God."
- 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- 50:16 But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false gods.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Introduction to Ezra; Ezra 1:7; Notes)
gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: Ezra 1:4; 1:6; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 2:69; 5:14; 6:5; 7:15; 7:16; 7:18; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 8:28; 8:30; 8:33)
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

• In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
• Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
• Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
• A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
• A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
• In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
• The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
• The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

• The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
• Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
• “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
• The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
• To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
• Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

• Galatians 05:22-24
• Genesis 01:12
• Genesis 02:09
• Genesis 02:17
• James 03:13
• Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 01:04 God saw that what he had created was good.
• 01:11 God plantedâ€¦ the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.”
• 01:12 Then God said, “It is not good for man to be alone.”
• 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
• 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
• 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
• 18:13 Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
• 28:01  "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me **good**?"

There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

**Word Data:**


*(Go back to: Ezra 3:11; 7:9; 7:18; 8:18; 8:22; 8:27; 9:12)*
govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:
A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

• The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
• In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
• A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:
• The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
• Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
• The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
• The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, king, power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:
• Acts 07:9-10
• Acts 23:22
• Acts 26:30
• Mark 13:9-10
• Matthew 10:18
• Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:
• Strong’s: H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

(Go back to: Ezra 2:63; 5:3; 5:6; 5:14; 6:6; 6:7; 6:13; 8:36)
grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: Ezra 9:8)
grain offering

Definition:
A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering, sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:
- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: Ezra 7:17)
guilt offering

Definition:
A guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required an Israelite to make if he had accidentally done something wrong such as disrespect God or damage another person's property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and the payment of a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: burnt offering, grain offering, sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:03
- 2 Kings 12:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Numbers 06:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817

(Go back to: Ezra 10:19)
guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, sin)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 39:02 They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was guilty of anything.
- 39:11 After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no guilt in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not guilty.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not guilty!”
- 40:04 Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are guilty, but this man is innocent.
- 49:10 Because of your sin, you are guilty and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

(Go back to: Ezra 9:6; 9:7; 9:13; 9:15; 10:10; 10:19)
Haggai

Facts:
Haggai was a prophet of Judah after the Jews returned home from being captives in Babylon.

- During the period when Haggai was prophesying, King Uzziah was reigning over Judah.
- The prophet Zechariah was also prophesying during this period.
- Haggai and Zechariah exhorted the Jews to rebuild the temple, which had been destroyed by the Babylonians under King Nebuchadnezzar.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar, Uzziah, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- Ezra 05:1-2
- Ezra 06:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2292

(Go back to: Ezra 5:1; 6:14)
hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

• To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
• To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
• The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
• The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
• Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
• The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
• When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

• These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
• The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
• An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
• To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
• The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
• In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

• Acts 07:25
• Acts 08:17
• Acts 11:21
• Genesis 09:05
• Genesis 14:20
• John 03:35
• Mark 07:32
• Matthew 06:03

Word Data:


472 / 625
hang, hung

Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

• In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person’s neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
• In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a “tree”), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
• Some ancient cultures "hung" a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
• For many references to death by “hanging” in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

• 2 Samuel 17:23
• Acts 10:39
• Galatians 03:13
• Genesis 40:22
• Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

(Go back to: Ezra 6:11)
head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler…” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:


(See also: grain)

(Go back to: Ezra 1:5; 2:68; 3:12; 4:2; 4:3; 7:28; 8:1; 8:16; 9:3; 9:6; 10:16)
heart

Definition:
The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

• To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
• The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
• The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
• The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

• Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
• Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
• If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
• Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
• The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
• The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
• Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

• 1 John 03:17
• 1 Thessalonians 02:04
• 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
• Acts 08:22
• Acts 15:09
• Luke 08:15
• Mark 02:06
• Matthew 05:08
• Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


(See back to: Ezra 6:22; 7:10; 7:27)
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:02 They even began building a tall tower to reach heaven.
- 14:11 He (God) gave them bread from heaven, called “manna.”
- 23:07 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 42:11 Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: Ezra 1:2; 5:11; 5:12; 6:9; 6:10; 7:12; 7:21; 7:23; 9:6)
Hittite

Definition:
The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now
Turkey and northern Palestine.

• Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah
  in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
• Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
• One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
• Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's
  heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
• The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 09:20-21
• Exodus 03:7-8
• Genesis 23:11
• Genesis 25:10
• Joshua 01:4-5
• Nehemiah 09:08
• Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: Ezra 9:1)
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God's glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:16 He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 09:12 “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- 13:01 “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- 13:05 “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- 22:05 “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- 50:02 As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 2:63; 8:28; 9:2; 9:8)
**hope, hoped**

**Definition:**
Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated a, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

**Bible References:**
- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

**Word Data:**

(Go back to: Ezra 10:2)
horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:
A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:
- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: Ezra 2:66)
horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: chariot, horse)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:05
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6571, H7395, G2460

(Go back to: Ezra 8:22)
The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel's descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh's temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

house of God, Yahweh’s house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:26
- Matthew 12:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

(Go back to: Ezra 8:17; 8:29; 8:30; 8:33; 8:36)
humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don't be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:10 “God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: Ezra 8:21)
**inherit, inheritance, heir**

**Definition:**

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father's possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **35:03** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)
iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: Ezra 9:6; 9:7; 9:13)
Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob’s name means “he grabs the heel” which is an expression meaning “he deceives.” As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob’s name to “Israel,” which means “he struggles with God.”
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph’s father in Matthew’s genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Israel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 07:01 As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau. Jacob loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- 07:07 Jacob lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- 07:08 After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- 07:10 The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.
- 08:01 Many years later, when Jacob was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: Ezra 8:18)
Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 08:15 The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- 09:03 The Egyptians forced the Israelites to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- 09:05 A certain Israelite woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- 10:01 They said, “This is what the God of Israel says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- 14:12 But despite all this, the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- 15:09 God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- 16:16 So God punished Israel again for worshiping idols.
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

**Jebus, Jebusite**

**Facts:**

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(See back to: Ezra 9:1)
Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a “fountain of tears,” to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, Judah, prophet, rebel, suffer, well)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 01:02
- Jeremiah 11:01
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:17 Once, the prophet Jeremiah was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- 21:05 Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3414, G2408

(Go back to: Ezra 1:1)
Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:01 Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of Jericho.
- 15:03 After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- 15:05 Then the walls around Jericho fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: Ezra 2:34)
Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:05 David conquered Jerusalem and made it his capital city.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 38:02 After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
- 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419
Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word “Jew” comes from the word “Judah.”

- People began to call the Israelites “Jews” after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:11 The Israelites were now called Jews and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- 37:10 Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- 37:11 But the religious leaders of the Jews were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- 40:02 Pilate commanded that they write, “King of the Jews” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: Ezra 4:12; 4:23; 5:1; 5:5; 6:7; 6:8; 6:14)
Joppa

Facts:

In biblical times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

- The ancient site of Joppa was located in the same place as the present-day city of Jaffa, which has now become incorporated into the city of Tel Aviv.
- In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat that was going to Tarshish.
- In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa, and Peter raised her back to life.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: the sea, Jerusalem, Sharon, Tarshish)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:37
- Acts 10:08
- Acts 11:4-6
- Acts 11:11
- Jonah 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3305, G2445

(Go back to: Ezra 3:7)
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
Examples from the Bible stories:

• **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy.”
• **34:04** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with joy, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
• **41:07** The women were full of fear and great joy. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 3:12; 3:13; 6:16; 6:22)
Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob’s older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the “tribe of Judah.” When used as the name of a region of land, the term “Judah” refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon’s reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the “Lion of Judah.”
- The words “Jew” and “Judea” come from the name “Judah.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3063

(Go back to: Ezra 9:9; 10:7)
Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2453

(Go back to: Ezra 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:8; 2:1; 3:9; 4:1; 4:4; 4:6; 5:1; 5:8; 7:14; 10:9)
judge, judgment

Definition:
The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

• The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
• God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
• The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
• Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
• In some contexts, God's “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
• “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:
• Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
• The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
• In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

• 1 John 04:17
• 1 Kings 03:09
• Acts 10:42-43
• Isaiah 03:14
• James 02:04
• Luke 06:37
• Micah 03:9-11
• Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
• 21:08 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.
• 39:04 The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
• 50:14 But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 7:25; 7:26; 10:14)
king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 08:06 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- 16:01 The Israelites had no king, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- 16:18 Finally, the people asked God for a king like all the other nations had.
- 17:05 Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became king of Israel. He was a good king, and the people loved him.
- 21:06 God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

**kingdom**

**Definition:**

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God's reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the kingdom of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the kingdom of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: Ezra 1:1; 1:2; 4:5; 4:6)
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:


(See also: Ezra 4:12; 4:13; 4:16; 5:8; 7:24; 7:25)
**lamb, Lamb of God**

**Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God's (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice, Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the lamb?”
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect lamb or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:08** He read, “They led him like a lamb to be killed, and as a lamb is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a lamb for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect lamb and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(Go back to: Ezra 6:9; 6:17; 7:17; 8:35)
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will

- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:07 God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
- 16:01 After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God's laws.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- 27:01 Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"
• **28:01** Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good?’ There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws.”

**Word Data:**

• Strong's: H430, H1881, H2706, H3068, H4687, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

*(Go back to: Ezra 3:2; 6:18; Notes; 7:6; 7:10; 7:12; 7:14; 7:21; 7:25; 7:26; 10:3)*
law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term "law" is used to mean a "principle."

• A "law" is similar to a "decree," but the term "law" is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
• Both "law" and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
• This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term "law of Moses," where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
• When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or "general rule."

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)

Bible References:

• Deuteronomy 04:02
• Esther 03:8-9
• Exodus 12:12-14
• Genesis 26:05
• John 18:31
• Romans 07:1

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

(Go back to: Ezra 7:26)
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying.”
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, law, Moses, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02
Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(Go back to: Ezra 7:24)
Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cedar, cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
- Deuteronomy 01:7-8
- Psalms 029:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(Go back to: Ezra 3:7)
Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

livestock, animals

Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cow, ox, donkey, goat, horse, sheep)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H929, H4399, H4735

(Go back to: Ezra 1:4; 1:6)
**lord, Lord, master, sir**

**Definition:**
In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: **God**, **Jesus**, **ruler**, **Yahweh**)

**Bible References:**
- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the Lord your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:03** This is the year of the Lord's favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: Ezra 10:3)
magistrate

Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

• In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
• Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “ruling judge” or “legal officer” or “city leader.”

(See also: judge, law)

Bible References:

• Acts 16:20
• Acts 16:35
• Daniel 03:1-2
• Luke 12:58

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H8200, H8614, G758, G4755

(Go back to: Ezra 7:25)
Mede, Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called “Medes.”

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, Elam, Persia)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:06
- Acts 02:09
- Daniel 05:28
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezra 06:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G3370

(Go back to: Ezra 6:2)
might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:20; 7:28)
Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

• In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
• Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

• Genesis 19:37
• Genesis 36:34-36
• Ruth 01:1-2
• Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

• Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: Ezra 9:1)
mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

• In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
• The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
• Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
• The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
• The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 15:34-35
• 2 Samuel 01:11
• Genesis 23:02
• Luke 07:31-32
• Matthew 11:17

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 10:6)
**name**

**Definition:**

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(See back to: Ezra 2:61; 5:1; 5:4; 5:10; 5:14; 6:12; 8:13; 8:20; 10:16)
nation

Definition:
A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonjews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:
- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: Ezra 4:10; 6:21)
Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the “Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, Babylon, Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 01:02
- Daniel 04:04
- Ezekiel 26:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 20:06 About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- 20:06 The king of Judah agreed to be Nebuchadnezzar's servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- 20:08 To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- 20:09 Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: Ezra 1:7; 2:1; 5:12; 5:14; 6:5)
Nehemiah

Facts:

Nehemiah was an Israelite forced to move to the Babylonian empire when the people of Israel and Judah were taken captive by the Babylonians.

- While he was the cupbearer to the Persian king, Artaxerxes, Nehemiah asked the king for permission to return to Jerusalem.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in rebuilding the walls of Jerusalem which had been destroyed by the Babylonians.
- For twelve years Nehemiah was the governor of Jerusalem before returning to the king's palace.
- The Old Testament book of Nehemiah tells the story of Nehemiah's work in rebuilding the walls and his governing of the people in Jerusalem.
- There were also other men named Nehemiah in the Old Testament. Usually the name of the father was added, to distinguish which Nehemiah was being talked about.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Artaxerxes, Babylon, Jerusalem, son)

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:1-2
- Nehemiah 01:02
- Nehemiah 10:03
- Nehemiah 12:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5166

(Go back to: Ezra 2:2)
noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king's official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:10)
**oath, swear, swearing, swear by**

**Definition:**

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: Ezra 10:5)
oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: Ezra 3:7; 6:9; 7:22)
**ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs**

**Definition:**

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: Ezra 3:4; 3:10; 7:10)
oversee, overseer

Definition:
The term “oversee” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

Word Data:


(See also: Ezra 3:8; 3:9)
palace

Definition:
The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:14; 6:2)
Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:14 God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the Passover every year.
- 38:01 Every year, the Jews celebrated the Passover. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- 38:04 Jesus celebrated the Passover with his disciples.
- 48:09 When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the Passover.
- 48:10 Jesus is our Passover Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the Passover celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: Ezra 6:19; 6:20)
peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: Ezra 4:17; 5:7; 9:12)
people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God's people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people of God" could be translated as “God's people” or “the people who worship God" or "people who serve God” or “people who belong to God."
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: Ezra 1:3)
people, people group,

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

• In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
• Depending on the context, the term “people” can can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
• In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
• A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
• The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
• The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
• The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
• “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
• The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 08:51-53
• 1 Samuel 08:07
• Deuteronomy 28:09
• Genesis 49:16
• Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 14:02 God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there. what follows is
• 21:02 God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the people groups of the world.
• 42:08 “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
• 42:10 "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

• 48:11 Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

• 50:03 He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all people groups!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

• Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

**perfect, perfected, perfection, complete**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

*(Go back to: Ezra 7:12)*
Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:07
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6522

(Go back to: Ezra 9:1)
Persia, Persians

**Definition:**

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, Assyria, Babylon, Cyrus, Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 36:20
- Daniel 10:13
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezekiel 27:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

(Go back to: Ezra 1:1; 1:2; 1:8; 3:7; 4:3; 4:5; 4:7; 4:9; 4:24; 5:6; 6:6; 6:14; 7:1; 9:9)
power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

• The “power of God” refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
• God has complete power over everything that he has created.
• God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
• Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
• Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

Bible References:

• 1 Thessalonians 01:05
• Colossians 01:11-12
• Genesis 31:29
• Jeremiah 18:21
• Jude 01:25
• Judges 02:18
• Luke 01:17
• Luke 04:14
• Matthew 26:64
• Philippians 03:21
• Psalm 080:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 22:05 The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
• 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
• 32:15 Immediately Jesus realized that power had gone out from him.
• 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
• 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
• 44:08 Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 8:22)
praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:
To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and praised God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, “Praise God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed praising God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of praise to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: Ezra 3:10; 3:11)
pray, prayer

Definition:
The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 06:05 Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 13:12 But Moses prayed for them, and God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.
- 19:08 Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- 21:07 Priests also prayed to God for the people.
- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and prayed with each other.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 6:10; 10:1)
precious, valuable, expensive, fine

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God's sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: gold, silver)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:01
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 1:6; 8:27)
priest, priesthood

Definition:
In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:
- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 04:07 "Melchizedek, the priest of God Most High"
- 13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was
sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.

- **19:07** So the priests of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite priest was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. Priests also prayed to God for the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior,"
  showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993,
  H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: Ezra 1:8; 7:28; 8:25)
promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

• The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
• Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
• To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

• Galatians 03:15-16
• Genesis 25:31-34
• Hebrews 11:09
• James 01:12
• Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 03:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
• 03:16 God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.
• 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's promise.
• 05:04 “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise.”
• 08:15 The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
• 17:14 Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his promises.
• 50:01 Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: Ezra 10:19)
Promised Land

Facts:

The term "Promised Land" only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: Canaan, promise)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:1-2
- Ezekiel 07:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:01 They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the Promised Land!
- 14:01 After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the Promised Land, which was also called Canaan.
- 14:02 God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- 14:14 Then God led the people to the edge of the Promised Land again.
- 15:02 The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the Promised Land.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the Promised Land.
- 20:09 This period of time when God's people were forced to leave the Promised Land is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

(Go back to: Introduction to Ezra)
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- 19:01 Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them prophets. The prophets heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- 19:06 All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
• 19:17 Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them.
• 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
• 43:05 “This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
• 43:07 “This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
• 48:12 Moses was a great prophet who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: Ezra 5 General Notes; 5:1; 5:2; 6:14; 9:11)
prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: bless, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 9:12)
province, provincial

Facts:
A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: Asia, Egypt, Esther, Galatia, Galilee, Judea, Macedonia, Medes, Rome, Samaria, Syria)

Bible References:
- Acts 19:30
- Daniel 03:02
- Daniel 06:02
- Ecclesiastes 02:08

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G1885

(Go back to: Ezra 2:1; 4:15; 5:8; 6:2; 7:16)
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:
The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:07 God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 16:02 Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 48:06 Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- 48:10 When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.
- 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- 49:11 Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be punished and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 9:13)
pure, purify, purification

Definition:
To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ezra 6:20)
Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

• Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
• When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
• Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Benjamin, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 27:27
• 1 Samuel 02:11
• 2 Chronicles 16:1
• Jeremiah 31:15
• Joshua 18:25-28
• Matthew 02:17-18

Word Data:

• Strong's: H7414, G4471

(Go back to: Ezra 2:26)
rebels, rebellions, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebels” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebels” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebellious when he does something that the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebels” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “rebell,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had rebellions against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebellions against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam rebellions against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also rebellions against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebellions against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and rebellious people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: Ezra 4:12; 4:15; 4:19)
**reign, rule**

**Definition:**

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Matthew 02:22-23

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: Ezra 4:6; 4:24; 6:15; 7:1; 7:13; 7:23; 8:1)
remnant

Definition:
The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 09:12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:07
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 04:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

(Go back to: Ezra 9:8; 9:14; 9:15)
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:
The term “righteousness” refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God's “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God's laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)
Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man.
- **50:10** Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 9:15)
robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

• Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
• They can be long or short.
• Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

• Exodus 28:4-5
• Genesis 49:11-12
• Luke 15:22
• Luke 20:46
• Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 9:3; 9:5)
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:20; 9:2)
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering, peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:14 After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice. God was happy with the sacrifice and blessed Noah and his family.
- 05:06 “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- 05:09 God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of Isaac.
13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.

17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.

48:06 Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.

48:08 But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

49:11 Because Jesus sacrificed himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:2; 6:3; 6:10; 6:17; 7:17; 8:25; 8:35; 9:4; 9:5)
Samaria, Samaritan

**Facts:**

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 10:33

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.
- **27:08** “The next person to walk down that road was a Samaritan. (Samaritans were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. Samaritans and Jews hated each other.)”
- **27:09** “The Samaritan then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him.”
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: Ezra 4:10)
scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: Ezra 4:8; 4:9; 4:17; 4:23; 7:6; 7:11; 7:12; 7:21)
scroll

Definition:
In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:03
- Luke 04:17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 05:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

(Go back to: Ezra 6:2)
seed, semen

Definition:
A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:
- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman's “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:
- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:
- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: Ezra 9:2)
seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 2:62; 4:2; 6:21; 7:10; 8:21; 8:22; 9:12; 10:16)
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term “serve” generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a “servant:” a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a “servant” and a “slave” than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law.)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The slave traders sold Joseph as a slave to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** “I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”
- **29:03** “Since the servant could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as slaves to make payment on his debt.’”
- **35:06** “All my father’s servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
- **47:04** The slave girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **50:04** Jesus also said, “A servant is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong’s: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: holy, sanctify, appoint)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: Ezra 8:24; 10:11; 10:16)
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:
The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8
• Psalms 006:8-10
• Psalms 123:03
• 1 Timothy 05:7-8
• 1 Timothy 06:13-14
• Jeremiah 15:15-16
• Job 16:9-10
• Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 8:22; 9:6; 9:7)
Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan’s son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The “Sidonians” were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Noah, Phoenicia, the sea, Tyre)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

(Go back to: Ezra 3:7)
silver

Definition:
Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph’s brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: Ezra 1:4; 1:6; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 2:69; 3:7; 5:14; 6:5; 7:15; 7:16; 7:18; 7:22; 8:25; 8:26; 8:28; 8:30; 8:33)
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:
The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children.”
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**.”
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 9 General Notes)
slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 6:20)
Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bathsheba, David, Israel, Judah, kingdom of Israel, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:14 Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him Solomon.
- 18:01 After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule. God spoke to Solomon and asked him what he wanted most. When Solomon asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. Solomon learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- 18:03 But Solomon loved women from other countries....When Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- 18:04 God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: Ezra 2:55; 2:58)
**son**

**Definition:**
The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

**Bible References:**
- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

**Examples from the Bible stories:**
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a son from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn sons.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the son of Joseph? they said.
Word Data:


spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a spiritual descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: Ezra 1:1; 1:5)


statute

Definition:
A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and "command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:
- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:
- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: Ezra 7:10; 7:11)
sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: Ezra 9:7)
tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

Definition:

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A “tax collector” was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, “tax collectors and sinners” was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: Jew, Rome, sin)

Bible References:

- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

34:06 He said, “Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader.” 34:07 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.’” 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be
merciful to me because I am a sinner.” 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous.” 35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

**Word Data:**

- Tax: Strong's: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5055, G5411
- Tax Collector: Strong's: H5065, H5674, G5057, G5058

*(Go back to: Ezra 4:13; 4:20; 6:8; 7:24)*
teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:
To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

(See also: Ezra 7:25)
temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God's holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple. God came and was present in the Temple, and he lived there with his people.
- 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures.
- 20:13 When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the Temple and the wall around the city of the city and the Temple.
- 25:04 Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the Temple and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- 40:07 When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the Temple was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485
(Go back to: Introduction to Ezra; Ezra 1 General Notes; 1:7; Notes; 3:6; 3:9; 3:10; 3:12; Notes; 4:1; Notes; 5:3; 5:8; 5:9; 5:11; 5:12; 5:14; 5:15; Notes; 6:5; 6:15; 7:16; 7:23)
transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress" means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word "trespass," but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress" can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “trangress" could be translated as to “sin" or to “disobey" or to "rebel."
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean "sin" or "transgress" or "trespass," it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

(Go back to: Ezra 9:4; 10:6; 10:10; 10:13)
tremble, stagger

Definition:
The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:
- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

(Go back to: Ezra 9:4; 10:3; 10:9)
trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word "transgression," but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, sin, transgress)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(See back to: Ezra 9:2; 10:2)
tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: Ezra 6:17)
tribute, contribution, fined

Definition:
The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: gold, king, ruler, tax)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G5411

(Go back to: Ezra 4:13; 4:20; 7:24)
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don't trouble her” could also be translated as “don't bother her” or “don't criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 4:4)
trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

• A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
• Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
• The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
• 2 Kings 09:13
• Exodus 19:12-13
• Hebrews 12:19
• Matthew 06:02
• Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: Ezra 3:10)
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:
To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:
- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:06 Then Jesus told a story about people who trusted in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: Ezra 8 General Notes)
Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, cedar, Israel, the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(Go back to: Ezra 3:7)
understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 8:16; 8:18)
unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(See back to: Ezra 6:22)
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 8:29)
wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: Ezra 6:9; 7:22)
**will of God**

**Definition:**

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: Ezra 7:18; 10:11)
wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: Ezra 6:9; 7:22)
wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that.
“Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:05 She also wanted to be wise, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- 18:01 When Solomon asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world.
- 23:09 Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 7:25)
wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:


(Go back to: Ezra 5:12; 8:22; 10:14)
Yahweh

Facts:
The term “Yahweh” is God's personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **13:05** “Do not make idols or worship them, for I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3050, H3068, H3069
Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerrubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the tent of meeting during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Darius, Ezra, Jehoshaphat, Jeroboam, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel)

Bible References:

- Ezra 05:1-2
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Zechariah 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2148

(Go back to: Ezra 5:1; 6:14)
Zerubbabel

**Facts:**

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, captive, Cyrus, Ezra, high priest, Jehoiakim, Joshua, Judah, Nehemiah, Persia, Zedekiah)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
- Ezra 02:1-2
- Ezra 03:8-9
- Luke 03:27-29
- Matthew 01:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

(Go back to: Ezra 2:2; 3:2; 3:8; 4:2; 4:3; 5:2)
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs
Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman
Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentuber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton
Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreicher
Paul Holloway
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik “Henry” de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George “Drew” Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik “Henry” de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community